This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

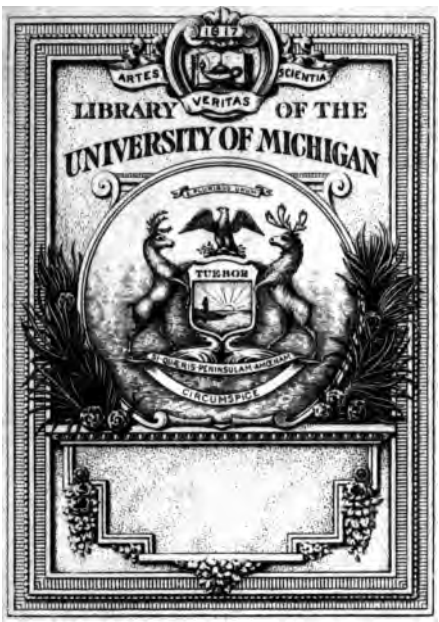
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

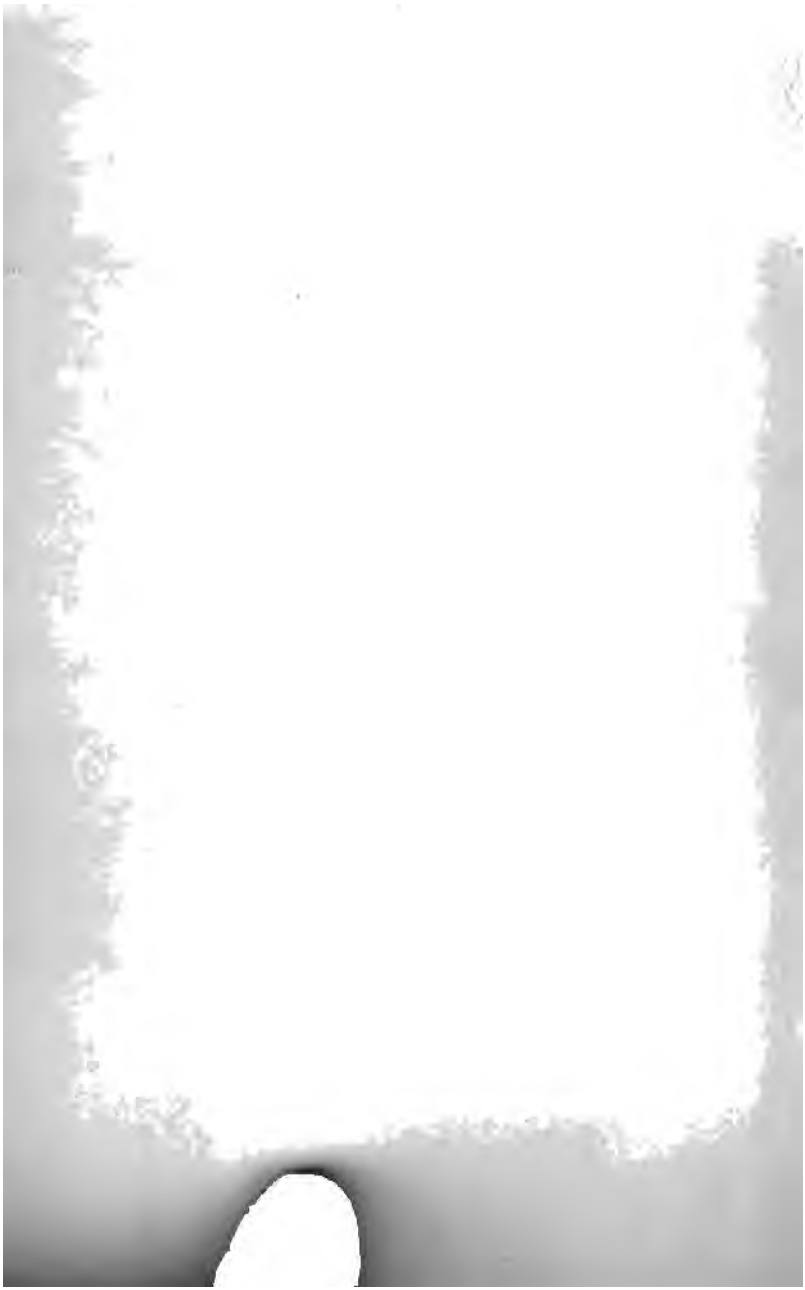
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

A 460323 DUPL



THE GIFT OF
Cornelia Steketee Hulst

BX
4700
.G4
D27



Cornell University Library
3X
4700
.A1
D37

4/- Potter 12 Bear St Leic.r Square 1836

MEMOIRS
OF
S^t GEORGE
THE
ENGLISH PATRON;
AND OF
The most Noble Order
OF THE
GARTER.

BEING
An Introduction to an intended History of the Antiquities of the *Castle*, *Town* and *Borough* of *Windsor*, with the Parts adjacent, in the County of *Berks*.

By *THOMAS DAWSON*, D. D.

London: Printed for HENRY CLEMENTS at the *Half-Moon* in St. *Paul*'s Church-yard. 1714.

His most Excellent Majesty GEORGE D.G. King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, Defender of ye Faith, and Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

M. V.r Gaelle Sculp.

Cornelia Steketee Hulst
d. 17. 1918

Auguſtiſſimo Potentiſſimoq;
Monarchæ
GEORGIO D. G.
Magnæ Britanniæ, Franciæ
Et Hiberniæ Regi, *&c.*
Fidei Defenſori, & SUPREMO
Nobiliſſimi Ordinis
GARTERII.

Sereniſſime Princeps,

CUM Europa Univerſa Te *Regem Britannicum maximâ cum lætitiâ quaquaverſum & ſuſpiciat*

A

piciat & veneretur ; Ignoscas, oro, si Ille, *Illustrissimo Tuo Nomine* cohonestatus, *hoc modo gratulari gestiat:* Ille, *inquam, quem olim* Gens *universim* Christiana *summis variisq; affecit Honoribus ; QUI verò* Gentis Angliacæ, *multis retrò sæculis, insignissimus audiit* Patronus.

Majores *nimirum nostri, præ aliis, studio earum Virtutum ducti fuêre, quibus adeò inclaruit iste* Heros: *Inclaruit quidem ; quando in* Militiâ Diocletianeâ* *multa magnaq; præclarè gessit :* majora *tamen*

* *Infra p. 7.*

in

in Militiâ Christianâ; *cùm scilicet* Martyrio *ejus tanta animi invictissimi eluceſceret magnitudo. DUOBUS planè* Magiſtris *cùm* (*uti docuit* Salvator) ſervire non potuerit, *haùd ampliùs Ille.** Romani Comitis *gaudet Titulo, ſed Titulo potius* Militis Chriſtiani.

Et inde fuit, Celſiſſime Princeps, *quòd* Edvardus *noſter, Heros alter laudatiſſimus, hujus nominis tertius, eidem* Georgio (*Militi Chriſtiano*) Militarem Ordinem (*qui jure optimo cæteris* Ordinibus *palmam præripit*) *conſecratum*

* *Infra p.* 3.

eſſe juſſerit: Inſtitutum *ſane ejuſmodi, quo nihil nobilius, nihil præclarius excogitari queat. In* hoc *enim conſpiciuntur omnia, quæ optimè tùm* Fortitudinem *acuant, tùm* Virtutem *conſervent, tùm deniq; Regni Britannici* Robur *ac* Diſciplinam *arctiùs tueantur.*

Leges *inſuper huc ſpectantes,* Rex Auguſtiſſime, Chriſtianam Fidem *æquè propugnant; cùm* Hereticæ pravitatis* *non minùs quam* Læſæ Majeſtatis *Reos damnent;* Puſillanimes *ſimul exturbent,* Egenis *miniſtrent,* * *& nihil non laudabile*

* *Infra p.* 75. * *Infra p.* 97.

Com-

Commilitonum *numero requirant: Adeò ut quivis facilè credat,* Sceptri Britannici *tùm* Decus *tùm* Tutamen *in Hoc ipſo* (*jam* Tuo) Ordine Illuſtriſſimo *aliquatenùs eſſe poſitum. Id ſaltem conſtat,* Rerum Britannicarum *Faciem luctuoſiorem nunquam extitiſſe, quàm cùm* Inſignia *hujus* Ordinis *olim fuerint conculcata: Illis nempe temporibus, quibus* Perduellium Rabies *Id omne quod* Sacrum, *quod* primævum, *quod* Monarchicum *ſapuit, exterminandum, funditùs delendum ſtatuebat.*

DEDICATIO.

Cùm verò, Rex Sereniſſime, *tot ac tanta ſint Emolumenta, quæ ex hâc* Equeſtri Dignitate *originem ceperint; cúmq; illa* ideò, *decurſu Temporum, validiſſimo roboris incremento aucta & amplificata nôrint omnes;*

Faxit Deus *O. M. ut* Nobiliſſimi *hujus* Ordinis *ſplendor in* verò Dei cultu, *religiosâ erga* Principem Auguſtiſſimum Fidelitate, *mutuâ denique* charitate *indies augeatur: Hæc omnia optimè docet, ſedulò urget* Eccleſia Anglicana; *cujus Ductu, ſicut nuper* Tranquilliſſimum *Tui* Adven-

DEDICATIO.

ventum *meritò gratulamur, ità (bono annuente Deo) eandem tranquillitatem* Tibi *ac* Regiæ Proſapiæ *in ſæculo omni conſervatam ſpondeamus: Quod animitus comprecatur*

Sacræ veſtræ Majeſtatis

Subditorum

Humillimus

THO. DAWSON.

PREFACE.

WHEN I firſt reſolv'd to ſearch into, and give ſome Account of, the *Antiquities* of *Windſor*, a *Place* that in many Reſpects ſo well deſerves it, and from a much abler Hand, I knew very well that ſome *Part* of the Work (and perhaps the *Pleaſanteſt* Part too) was already done to my Hands; *viz.*

I. An Account of that moſt Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, with whoſe Solemnities the *Founder* was pleas'd to honour the *Place* of his *Nativity*, and to which the *Inſtallation* has ever ſince been fix'd, as an Eſſential Privilege belonging thereto.

II. An Account of the *Saint* of the ſaid Noble *Order*; a *Saint* ſo eſteem'd long before *Popery* had a Being; and *who* was acknowledg'd here, even in the Times of the *Saxons*, to be the *Patron Saint* of the *Nation* in general, as afterwards of this *Heroick Order* in particular.

The *Firſt Account* has been ſo accurately drawn by the ingenious Pen of Mr. *Aſhmole*, that it admits of no material Emendations; The great Complaint is, that the Book is now grown very ſcarce, and the Price conſequently high; or, if it may be charg'd with any *Fault*, 'tis *that* of its being too *Voluminous*.

The

The *Other Account* has been given us likewiſe by two very learned Men, Mr. *Selden*, and the Reverend Dr. *Heylin*, who have with great Pains trac'd, and ſubſtantially prov'd, the Hiſtory of St. *George*. The Account given by the *Former*, is but a very ſmall Part of that excellent Treatiſe in *Folio*, call'd the *Titles of Honour*; and *That* by the *Latter*, is a whole Book in *Quarto*; wherein many Things are generally thought ſuperfluous; and beſides, the *Book* itſelf, as alſo *that* of Mr. *Selden*'s, are now a days but rarely met with.

For theſe Reaſons, but more eſpecially, in that theſe *two Accounts* have not been fully and profeſſedly treated of by any *One* ſingle Perſon, I have thought it proper, and as ſubſervient to my *Preſent Deſign*, to give the Reader at one View, and with all poſſible Brevity, the Subſtance of theſe *Two Accounts* already publiſh'd: But in what Manner 'tis done, the Reader muſt judge---I only obſerve, as to the Account of the *Patron Saint*; I have made Choice of *That* given by Mr. *Selden*: A Gentleman, who upon Occaſion could be merry enough with the *Saints*, without the *Spleen* that others have ſhewn: And I am apt to think, what is deliver'd from ſuch a Hand, may weigh much more with *ſome* in this Age; who are ſo ready upon all Occaſions to cavil at any Thing, eſpecially of *That* Nature, when it comes from the Hands of a *Clergy-Man*.

The *Digreſſion* which occurs (*Pag.* 221) concerning the Prince *of* Wales's *Stall*, is what, I preſume, the Reader will eaſily pardon at this Time; when every good Subject is reflecting with Pleaſure upon *its* being, after a long Vacancy, ſo happily fill'd; the Happineſs moreover ſtill augmented by the Proſpect Heaven gives us, of *its* continuing ſo, in ſuch

ſuch *Royal Deſcendants* from the ſame Illuſtrious Houſe; who (we pray) may ſucceſſively, upon Quitting that *Stall*, inherit the *Throne* as well as *Vertues* of that mighty *Monarch* that now fills it.

'Tis hop'd the Reader will be as little offended at the Length, which the two Bodies of *Statutes*, the one of *Inſtitution*, the other of *Reformation*, take up in this Volume; when he finds, that the *References* thereto, almoſt in every Page, beſides the Reaſons given (*Page* 70.) do neceſſarily require it. And as to ſuch *References*, the Reader is deſir'd to take notice, that there being ſome Variation in the *Latin* and *Engliſh* Statutes of King *Henry* VIII. (the latter of which only are here inſerted) the References ſometimes may regard the Article as it ſtands numbe'r'd in the *Latin* and not the *Engliſh* Statutes. ---But this Miſtake I have generally remedied, by quoting the *Page* of *This* Book, and not the Article, for what is referr'd to in thoſe Statutes. As to all other *Quotations*, which I have judg'd proper to be made uſe of, either from Mr. *Selden*, Dr. *Heylin* or Mr. *Aſhmole*; ſome of them I have examin'd myſelf; and, conſidering the known Care and Fidelity of thoſe great Men, 'tis hop'd they will *all* be found to anſwer accordingly: At leaſt, thus much, I think, the Reader may depend on, that, wherein *they* have acted faithfully, the ſame Fidelity will appear *here* alſo. There are, no queſtion, ſome Literal Faults at leaſt, in the Book itſelf; two Miſtakes more eſpecially the Reader is deſir'd to correct with his Pen, *viz.* one, *Page* 42. *l.* 23. where inſtead of 1550 *read* 1350; the other, *Page* 299. *l.* 23. where inſtead of *Black* read White.

The Reader will often meet with *Marginal Abbreviations* relating to the *Books* of the *Order*; as *Lib. N.*

which

which is *Liber Niger*; *Lib. C.* which is *Liber Cæruleus*; *R.* Rubeus, and *Carol.* Carolinus; An Account of which *Books* he will find at *Page* 115.

As to my intended *History* of the *Antiquities* of *Windsor*, 'tis hop'd, the *Collections* I have made for that Purpose, may soon be augmented by the generous Communications of Friends and others, besides the Assistance I promise myself from the *Musæum Ashmoleanum* at *Oxford*.

I once design'd to have presented the Reader *here* with an Account of the *Grand Feast* of *St. George*; tho' it has been many Years disus'd, and is not, (as the *Installation Ceremony*) wholly appropriated to the *Castle* of *Windsor*. But *that*, together with a Collection of the *Monumental Inscriptions* in the Royal *Free-Chappel* there, with some historical Notes thereon; as also a complete List of the *Knights-Companions* to this present Time; may either be an Appendix to the *Antiquities* themselves, or the Subject of another Tract, if what is now offer'd prove agreeable to the *Publick*.

CON-

CONTENTS.

Page.

SAINT George *the* Patron *Saint of* England; *as well as of the moſt noble* Order; *his Martyrdom; when and where.* 1

The Teſtimonies given of Him in the Eaſtern Church. 3

The Teſtimonies given of him in the Weſtern Church. 12

How He *came to be call'd* Patron *of the* Engliſh; *with an Anſwer to ſuch who would make him the ſame with* George *the* Arian. 15

The Figure, *by which this* Patron *Saint is commonly repreſented.* 26

The Order *of St.* George *or the* Garter; *and the Occaſion of its* Inſtitution. 30

The Time *when this* Order *was inſtituted.* 41

The Honour *and Reputation of this* Order. 44

King Edward III's *Statutes* (Latin) *of Inſtitution.* 46

King Henry VIII's *Statutes* (Engliſh) *of the ſaid Noble* Order. 71

The Annals *of this Noble* Order, *and the Names of the ſeveral* Books, *wherein they are recorded.* 115

The

CONTENTS.

Page.

The Habit *and* Enſigns *of this Noble* Order; *and firſt of the* Garter. 117
Of the Mantle. 121
Of the Surcoat *or Kertle.* 126
Of the Hood *and* Cap. 129
Of the Croſs *of the* Order *with the Glory or* Star. 131
The ancient Cuſtom of Honouring the Queen *and great* Ladies *with* Robes, *&c.* 132
Of the Collar *of the* Order; *as well as Collars in general.* 134
Of the Leſſer George. 140
The Times *of Wearing the whole* Habit. 142
The Times *of Wearing the* Collar *with the* Great George. 145
Of the Officers *belonging to this Noble* Order; *and firſt of the* Prelate. 147
Of the Chancellor. 151
Of the Regiſter. 161
Of Garter *Principal King of Arms.* 171
Of Black Rod *or chief Uſher.* 175
An Account of the Penſions *payable to theſe Officers.* 180
The Manner of Electing *a Knight into this Noble* Order. 182
The Qualifications *requir'd in ſuch Knight.* 196
The three Points *of* Reproach *taken notice of in King* Henry VIII's *Statutes.* 198
A fourth Point *of* Reproach. 200
The Manner of Inveſting *a Knight-Subject with the* Garter *and* George. 204

Of

CONTENTS.

Page.

Of the Preparations *made for the perſonal Inſtallation of a Knight.* 212

Of the Removal of Stalls *and* Atchievements; *wherein, a particular* Digreſſion *concerning his* Royal Highneſs *the Prince of* Wales's *Stall.* 218

How the Law *for Settlement of* Stalls *ſtands at this Day.* 229

What Things a Knight-Elect *is to provide at his own Charge.* 232

The perſonal Inſtallation *of a* Knight-Subject, *with the* particular Ceremonies *thereof.* 238

The Nature of the Oath *which a Knight-Subject takes at his* Inſtallation. 256

The Form *of the* Oath *drawn up for the Prince of* Wales. 259

The Form of the Oath *which a* Knight-Subject *takes at his* Inſtallation. 260

The Grand Dinner *on the Day of Inſtallation, with the Ceremonies then obſerv'd.* 269

Of the Inſtallation of a Knight-Subject by Proxy. 273

The Manner of Electing Strangers *into this Noble* Order. 279

The Preparations *for Inveſting* Strangers *with the Habit and Enſigns.* 284

The Inſtallation of an Inveſted Stranger *by* Proxy. 291

Of the Honours *paid to deceas'd* Knights-Companions; *and firſt of the* Charities, *upon ſuch Deceaſe.* 298

CONTENTS.

Page.

The Time *for Offering up the* Atchievements. 307

The Manner of Offering them up. 309

The Atchievements *and Knight's* Mantles *belong to the College of* Windſor. 319

The Degradation *of a Knight-Companion, and the* Ceremony *thereof.* 314

The Duties *and* Fees *payable by the Knights Companions at their Inſtallations.* 322

When *the* Sovereign *of the* Order *ſtands charg'd with* Fees, *and* when *not.* 323

The Inſtallation Fees belonging to the Dean and Canons, as alſo the Alms Knights. 325

The Fees *belonging to the* Choir. 326

The Regiſters *Fee.* 327

Garter's *Droits and Fees.* 329

Black-Rod's *Fees, with the Officers of Arms.* 331

Fees *or* Benevolences *to the Sovereign's* Servants. 333

A Settlement of the College Fees (15 Car. II.) 334

St.

St. GEORGE

THE

Engliſh Patron, &c.

THE Saint of the moſt Honourable and Noble *Order* of the *Garter* was and is St. *George* the great Martyr, and ſo reputed the *Patron Saint* of *England*, as St. *Dennis* is of *France*, St. *Andrew* of *Scotland*, St. *James* of *Spain*, &c. And the *Order* itſelf is often ſtyled in the Statutes, *The Order of St. George*, as well as of the *Garter*. Whence *Chaucer* alſo thus writes to the Knights of the Order:

—— for Gods Pleaſaunce
And his Mother, and in Signifiaunce
That ye been of St. Georges libere,
Doth Him Service and Knightly Obeiſance;
For Chriſts Cauſe is his, well known ye.

At the Inſtitution of the Order, the Chappel at *Windſor* was conſecrated to his Name, and his * Day then appointed for the annual Solemnity of the Knights. ----- He ſuffer'd Martyrdom, as 'tis ſaid, in the IXth Perſecution under *Diocletian*. Some ſay the Time was *A. D.* 290, † or the VIIth of *Diocletian*; and that the Place where He ſuffered was *Rama* or *Ramel* in *Paleſtine*. || His Name ſoon grew very famous in both the *Eaſtern* and *Weſtern* Churches, and many Dedications of Churches and Fraternities, and frequent Invocations, eſpecially in the Time of Wars, have been made to Him.

* *Ap.* 23.

† *Baron.*

|| *Gul. Malm. de Geſt. Reg. L.* 4. *alii.*

THIS *Patron Saint* may be conſider'd in theſe following Reſpects, *viz.*

1. IN relation to the Teſtimonies given of Him in the *Eaſtern* Church, ſuch as concern his *Name*, and ſo give Light to his Quality, Martyrdom in general, and to his Honours; omitting what is ſaid of the Miracles belonging to Him.

2. IN relation to the Teſtimonies given of Him in the *Weſtern* Church, more particularly ſuch as relate to *England*;

England; as namely, how He came to be called *Patron of the Engliſh*, and ſince honoured here in his Feaſt-Day.

3. In relation to the *Figure*, by which He is commonly repreſented.

1. As to the Teſtimonies in the *Eaſtern* Church; thoſe attributed to *Paſicrates*, (who, they ſay, was a Servant to St. *George*) and his Acts written by *Simeon Metaphraſtes*, are obvious enough.* Nor ſhall we need more than name ſuch as are ſo obvious. But in ſome old Rituals or Books of ordinary Service of that Church (where they have alſo other † Saints of the ſame Chriſtian Name, but all diſtinguiſh'd plainly enough from this) He is ſuppoſed, as in other Teſtimonies, to have been of *Cappadocia*. 'Tis alſo deliver'd in thoſe Rituals, that He was of a good Family, and a very famous Commander in the Wars under *Dioclesian*; but that when He ſuffer'd Martyrdom, He was a *Count*.* So much is but the Interpretation of theſe Words, Ὁ ἔνδοξος καὶ θαυμαστὸς καὶ μέγας μάρτυς Γεώργιος κατὰ τὲς χρόνες ἦν

* *Ap. Lipoman. & Surium. To.* 2.

† *Apr.* ſ ϛ, ϛ ιθ.

* *Conc Rom.* Counts, *See* Seld. *Tit. of Hon.* Part 2. C. 1. P. 296, 297, *&c.*

Διοκλητιανῦ τῦ Βασιλέως, ἐκ χώρας τῆς Καππαδόκων γένους ἐπισήμυ ἐν ταῖς τῶν τριβύνων στρατείαις διαπρέψας, ἐν ᾧ ᾖ ἀθλεῖν ἔμελλε, Κόμης ἦν τὴν ἀξίαν [Μηνιαῖον Apr. κε. & Antholog. *eod. die.*] 'Tis ſaid there alſo, He was beheaded; and to that Purpoſe they have theſe *Iambiques*, and this *Hexameter* before his Commemoration, according as they have the like before the Commemorations of other Saints in their Rituals.

Ἐχθρὸς ὁ τέμνων Γεώργιος ἐν μάχαις
Ἑκὼν παρ' ἐχθρῶν τέμνεται διὰ ξίφος.
Ἥρε Γεωργίυ εἰκάδι τριτάτῃ αὔχενα χαλκός.

That is, St. *George who ſlew his Enemies in the Field, was willingly ſlain by the Sword of his Enemies: And on the* 23*d* (*of April*) *He was beheaded.* Very many Forms of Invocation of Him they have there alſo, wherein, beſides the uſual Attributes, that have relation to War, given to Martyrs [for they are altogether called *Candidatus* * *Exercitus*, as in the *Te Deum*, Τὸ ἅγιον τῶν μαρτύρων στράτευμα, in the *Greek* Rituals; and *the noble Army of Martyrs* in our Liturgy.] He hath many,

* *V. Rob. Monach. Hiſt. Hieroſ. Lib.* 8.

many, that ſometimes expreſly, ſometimes with Alluſion, peculiarly denote his Military Quality and Command, and his being the great Patron of Soldiers. In the ſame Church there are in particular two *Menologia*, the one for Goſpels, and the other for Epiſtles and Acts of the Apoſtles. That for *Goſpels* of Saints Days is a Part of their Ritual, which they call Εὐαγγέλιον. And in the *April* of that, the Goſpels are only ſet down for the Days of St. *Mary* of *Egypt*, *Theodorus Syceotes*, this St. *George*, St. *Mark*, and St. *James*. That for *Epiſtles* is in their Ritual, which they title Ἀπόϛολος, where St. *Mary* of *Egypt*, St. *George*, St. *Mark*, and St. *James* only are remembred. But in the Ἀποϛολο-εὐάγγελα at the End of their *Euchologium*, made for all the Months of the Year, all *April* hath nothing elſe but what belongs to this Saint *George*. Neither do they honour Him only on his own *Feaſt* Day, but alſo expreſly on the *Feaſt* Days of others that have relation to Him; as of *Alexandra* eſpecially, and *Theodorus Syceotes*. S. *Alexandra*, as they take notice in her Commemoration,

was Empreſs and Wife to *Diocletian*; and that ſhe being an Eye-witneſs of the Tortures which St. *George* ſuffer'd in Preparation to the Accompliſhment of his Martyrdom, turned Chriſtian, and was thereupon committed to Priſon; where, when ſhe heard of the Emperor's Edict for the Beheading both of St. *George* and herſelf, ſhe peaceably gave up her Life in fervent Prayer, and prevented the Execution. Thoſe three alſo that follow her in the Catalogue, *Apollo*, *Iſaacius*, and *Quadratus*, being her Servants, were converted by the Example of her Conſtancy, and have the ſame *Feaſt* with Her on the 21ſt of *April*. And as for *Theodorus Syceotes*, who lived ſome Ages after St. *George*, and died under *Heraclius*, 'tis ſaid in his Commemoration, which is the Day before St. *George*'s, that St. *George* frequently appear'd to Him, and taught him and directed him during his Life. Thus have they from ancient Time honour'd his Memory in their ſacred Solemnities, as one of their moſt principal Saints and Martyrs; whoſe Name, tho' it occur not expreſly in *Euſebius* (the

(the beſt and moſt ancient Writer of *Diocletian*'s Perſecution) yet may perhaps be underſtood, where he ſpeaks * of the Beginning of that Perſecution. Ἐκ τῶν ἐν ςρατείαις ἀδελφῶν καταρχομένε τε διωγμε ---- The *Perſecution*, ſays he, *beginning among the Brethren that were in the Wars* or *in Garriſon*. And *Ruffinus*, of the ſame Time, in his Tranſlation, † *Divina providentia adgreditur primò ſenſim refrænare lapſantes, & integro adhuc Eccleſiæ ſtatu, congregationibuſque manentibus, indulget interim eos qui erant in militia tantum, Gentilium perſecutione pulſari.* Under theſe *in Militia*, this Martyr might be comprehended, being firſt a Captain, and afterward raiſed, as they ſay, to the Dignity of a *Count*, ‖ by which he might more eminently have place in the *Militia*. And 'tis eaſy to obſerve, that an exceeding Number of great Martyrs are deſigned in *Euſebius*'s * Hiſtories of the Perſecutions, whom he names not: And yet they have been preſerv'd in Memory both for their Quality and the Nature of their Martyrdom, in ſeveral Acts and Traditions of them, and in Martyrologies that

* *Eccl. Hiſt. L.* 8. *C.* 1. *C.* 29.

† *Lib.* 8. *C.* 1.

‖ *Vt ſup. p.* 3.

* *L.* 8. *C.* 12.

have been as Supplements to *his* general Deſignation. Nay, 'tis probable enough, that even in *Euſebius*'s Martyrology (which he made at the Command of *Conſtantine* the Great) this very Saint was named among the many more, who being omitted in his Hiſtory, were received from Him into the Martyrologies of the ſucceeding Ages; and, had it not been for thoſe who ſo received them, and together with St. *George* tranſmitted them to Poſterity, had been utterly unknown to us. Some ſay, that Martyrology of *Euſebius* is extant in the *Eſcurial*. And in that very Year that Saint *George*'s Martyrdom is placed, no leſs than 700 * Martyrs had their Crowns within 30 Days; many of whoſe Names we are ſure, if not all, are utterly omitted in the Eccleſiaſtical Accounts that are left us.

* *Flor. Wig. ad A. D.* 290.

Besides theſe *Rituals*, divers obſervable, yet not very obvious, Teſtimonies of *Him* are in the *Writers* of the *Eaſtern* Parts. Erections of Churches were frequent to *Him* there; and at *Ramel* eſpecially, famous for His Shrine and Martyrdom, a Biſhop-

rick

rick was, above 500 Years ago, inſtituted and conſecrated to *Him*. And *Juſtinian*, who was Emperor but about 240 Years after St. *George*'s Paſſion, built a Temple to *Him* in *Armenia*, where 'tis likely He receiv'd much of His Fame, as in a Neighbouring Country to *Cappadocia*. So expreſly ſays *Procopius*, * that lived under *Juſtinian*; καὶ ἱερὸν Γεωργίῳ τῷ Μάρτυρι, ἐν Βυζανοῖς ἐδείματο· *Et Templum extruxit Georgio Martyrio in Byzanis*. I know ſome very learned Men have taken that Paſſage of *Procopius*, for a Temple built by Him in *Conſtantinople*; were it ſo, the Teſtimony were enough for the ancient Memory of the *Martyr*. But plainly, *Juſtinian*'s Buildings at *Conſtantinople* are reckon'd by *Procopius* purpoſely in his firſt Book, and the third (wherein he ſays this) he profeſſes to belong to what he built in *Armenia*. Again, *Cedrenus*, ſpeaking of the Perſecution under *Diocletian*, ſays, that πολλοὶ † τῶν τῆς ἀθλήσεως ἀνεδήσαντο ςέφανον. Ἐξ ὧν εἰσι Πέτρος Ἀλεξανδρείας, καὶ Ἄνθιμος Νικομηδείας, καὶ Πρόκοπιος, καὶ Γεώργιος, οἱ ἀοίδιμοι Μάρτυρες, *Many were*

* *L.* 3. *de ædificiis Juſtin.*

† *Compend. Hiſt. p.* 218.

were crown'd with Martyrdom, and among them, Peter *of* Alexandria, *and* Anthimus *of* Nicomedia, *and* Procopius, and GEORGE, *the famous Martyrs.* And *Joannes Cantacuzenus* (he that was Emperor) uſing ſome Arguments taken from the Martyrs of the Chriſtian Church, both in behalf of the *Chriſtians*, and againſt the *Mahumedans*, mentions Martyrs in general, but takes St. *George* for his ſingular Example. || Ὁ παρ' ἡμῶν Χριστιανῶν τιμώμενος μάρτυς τῷ Χριστῷ Γεώργιος, &c. *The Martyr of Chriſt*, ſays He, *that is honour'd by us Chriſtians, St.* George, *(who is alſo honour'd by the Muſulmans themſelves, and called by them* Cheter Eliaz*) being tortured and tempted by the Wicked, and by Idolaters, that He might be brought to deny Chriſt, and worſhip and adore their Gods, choſe rather to have undergone a thouſand Deaths, and a thouſand Tortures for the Name of Chriſt, than to renounce the Faith that He had in Him.* And *Cantacuzenus* goes on there with ſome more Particulars of the Hiſtory of His Martyrdom, as if it were the moſt eminent Example of Martyrdom in their Church,

|| *Apologia καλὰ τῶ Μωαμεθ. γ.*

Church, and ſuch a one as was enough, in that Kind of Argument, to make up His Apology for the *Chriſtians* againſt the *Muſulmans*. In *Venice* alſo the chief Church, for the *Grecians*, is dedicated to St *George*'s Name. *Emanuel Melaxus* * remembers it with the Title of *Great St. George*, where he ſpeaks of the Trouble the *Grecians* were in there, when *Arſenius* brought Pope *Alexander* VI. Letters againſt them, to the Duke of *Venice*, about 200 Years ago. And upon ſome Inſtauration of this Church, † an Inſcription of Dedication was made for it, to our *Saviour*, and St. *George*, in the Name of all the *Grecians* that lived there, and of thoſe that us'd to come thither. There is likewiſe, among them of the *Greek* Church, a Teſtimony of an Order of Religious Knighthood, under the Title of this Martyr, which continues to this Day, from no other Original than the very Time of *Conſtantine* the Great, if we may believe the Pretences that the Sovereigns of the Order themſelves make to it: I mean that *Order*, whereof thoſe of the Imperial Family of the *Comneni*

* *Hiſt. Patriarch. p.* 151.

† *A. D.* 1564.

Comneni claim at this Day to be Sovereigns, and accordingly make their *Conſtantiniani Cavalieri* (as they call them) under the Rule of St. *Baſil*, and the Title of St. *George*, with the *Red Croſs* and thoſe Words: *In hoc Signo vince*; or, ἐν τούτῳ νίκα, written with Gold upon it. ‖ This, they ſay, was begun by *Conſtantine* the Great, and afterwards encreas'd by *Heraclius* upon his Victory had againſt *Coſroes*. Many other Teſtimonies of the *Eaſtern* Parts might be alledg'd concerning St. *George*: But let theſe ſuffice, and in the next place, let us take a ſhort View of ſuch Teſtimonies as are given of *Him* in the *Weſtern* Parts.

‖ *V. Euſeb. de vit. Conſt. L. 1. C. 32.*

2. In the *Weſtern* Church, the Accounts of *Him* are large in ſeveral Writers, ſuch as, *Jacobus de Voragine*, *Lipomanus*, *Surius*, and the like; who write, *ex profeſſo*, the Lives of the Saints. They are obvious, and therefore we omit them here. The ancienteſt Martyrologies have *Him* alſo on the xxiii. of *April*. *Gregory* the Great, * that liv'd about 300 Years after the ſuppos'd Time of His Martyrdom, repair'd an ancient Church dedicated

* *L. 4. Indict. 4. Ep. 68.*

dicated to His Memory. And *Sidonius*, Biſhop of *Mentz*, in the Time of *Juſtinian*'s Reign, erected a Church to this Saint; upon which *Venantius Fortunatus*, a Chriſtian Poet, of little leſs Antiquity, * hath this Epigram.

* *Poem. L. 2. Epig.* 13.

Martyris egregii pollens micat aula GeorgI,
Cujus in hunc mundum ſpargitur altus honor.
Carcere, cæde, ſiti, vinclis, fame, frigore, flammis,
Confeſſus Chriſtum duxit ad aſtra caput.
Qui virtute potens Orientis in arce ſepultus
Ecce ſub occiduo Cardine præbet opem.
Ergo memento preces, & reddere dona Viator,
Obtinet hic meritis quod petit alma fides.
Condidit Antiſtes Sidonius *iſta decenter,*
Proficiant animæ quæ nova Templa ſuæ.

Nei-

NEITHER is it to be omitted here, that in the ancient *Ordo Romanus* (which is a Ceremonial or Ritual for the Conſecration of *Biſhops*, *Abbots*, *Nuns*, *&c.*) there is an *Ordo ad armandum Eccleſiæ Defenſorem vel alium Militem*; and after divers Prayers, proper to the giving of that Dignity of Knighthood, one follows in theſe Words, preſently after the Shield given: *Domine Deus, qui conteris Bella, & adjutor, & protector es omnium in Te ſperantium, reſpice propitius invocationem noſtram, & per merita Sanctorum Martyrum tuorum & Militum, Mauricii, Sebaſtiani,* GEORGII, *præſta huic Viro victoriam de hoſtibus ſuis, &c.* But as it happens frequently in the Reports of what is at all wonderful (ſuch are thoſe of the Sufferings of the Martyrs) ſo has it in that of St. *George*; that ſo many incredible Circumſtances are added, and ſo mix'd with his Martyrdom, that the Relation of *Him* hath ſuffer'd too much Blemiſh by ſuch Mixtures. And hence it is, that in the ſixth General Council at *Conſtantinople*, a ſpecial Canon is made † againſt the Admiſſion of ſuch Lives of the

† *Can.* 63.

Holy

Holy Martyrs, as were written by τῆς ἀληθείας ἐχθροὶ, or *Hereticks*, as they are there call'd, ὡς ἂν τὰς τῶ Χριςῶ μάρτυρας ἀτιμάζοιεν, καὶ πρὸς ἀπιςίαν ἐνάγοιεν τὰς ἀκόυντας, *to the end they might diſhonour the Martyrs of Chriſt, and make the Relations of them incredible to the Hearers.* And yet ſo it is, thoſe Acts relating to our Saint, written by *Metaphraſtes*, and the Compilers of the Saints Lives in the later Times, and the Author of the common Legend, and ſuch like, have Vanities enough mix'd with His Martyrdom: And therefore, as to the many Dedications of Churches and Societies to *Him* in the later Ages, when Ignorance and Superſtition had ſo much the Aſcendant; as to the Mention of His Relicks, His frequent Apparitions, and the like, we ſhall here omit them, being ſuch as cannot add any valuable Honour to His Name, beyond that which thoſe ancient Teſtimonies have given *Him.* I rather then proceed, as propos'd, to

CONSIDER, in particular, how St. *George* came to be call'd *Patron of the Engliſh*, and ſince honour'd here in His *Feaſt-Day*. And certainly 'tis much

much eaſier to gueſs at the Reaſon why *His Name* was choſen by them, than at the Time when it was choſen. 'Tis nothing ſtrange, that ſo Military a Nation ſhou'd chooſe the Name of ſuch a *Soldier Saint*, and of one, whom the Ancients ſo often give the peculiar Name of *Tropæophorus* or Victorious; being alſo of a far greater Eminency in both Churches, than either St. *Sabbas*, St. *Sebaſtian*, St. *Maurice*, or any of the reſt, that were Soldiers alſo. And in the Articles, prepar'd by *Richard Scroope*, Archbiſhop of *York*, * againſt *Henry* IV. He is call'd St. *George*, Martyr and Knight, Special Protector and Defender of the Realm of England and Avoket. So toward the End of *Edward* III. alſo, *viz.* in his 44th Year, in the Conſtitutions of a *Guild* erected to *Him* by ſome of the *Weſt-ſtreet* in *Chicheſter*. He is ſtyled, *Anglorum Protector & Patronus. In Dei nomine, Amen, Die Sabbati in Feſto Sancti Bartholomæi Apoſtoli contingente*, (ſo are the Words of the Preamble to thoſe Conſtitutions) *in Anno Domini* MCCCLXVIII. *Indi-*

* *MSS.*

ctione

ctione viii. *Pontificatus ſanctiſſimi in Chriſto Patris & Domini noſtri Urbani divina Providentia Papæ* V. *anno* XVII. *menſis Auguſti die* XXIV. *ad honorem S. Trinitatis ſuique glorioſi Martyris* GEORGII *Anglorum Protectoris & Patroni, quidam de* Weſtrata Ciceſtr. *devoti ad ipſum Sanctum ſumma devotione excitati imaginem ipſius in Eccleſia* Ciceſtr: *honorifice erexerunt fraternitatem quandam inter eoſdem ſtatuentes, &c.* But for the firſt and exact Time or Age, altho' I have not obſerv'd any warrantable Story, either of Invocation of His Name, or other peculiar Honour done to *Him* by the *Engliſh*, as drawing *Him* to their Part, before *Edward* III. yet 'tis very likely, that *He* was long before taken by our Nation as their *Patron-Saint*, and that perhaps, in the Time of the Holy Wars, when our Anceſtors had ſo frequent Acceſs, by the Aſſiſtance of their Swords, to thoſe *Eaſtern* Parts, where *He* was ever ſince His Martyrdom, and to this Day is ſo magnify'd. By ſome Accounts we have reaſon to believe, that even our *Richard* I. did there repair a Temple in Memory of

this Saint---For ſo *Johannes Cotovicus*, * where He is ſpeaking of *Lydda*, ſays, *Nunc ſolo æquata & in cinerem fere verſa tota neglecta jacet: Præter pauca enim Maurorum tuguriola ſolum ſupereſt Templum in Martyris* (GEORGII) *memoriam à* Richardo Angliæ Rege (*ut aliqui putant*) *reſtauratum*, *&c.* Nay farther, to ſhew in what great Veneration this Saint was had among us long before, there is a very ancient Martyrology, peculiarly belonging to this Kingdom, in *Saxon*, or the ancient *Engliſh* of the Time before the *Normans*, (which I have ſeen) † in which St. *George* is the only Saint mention'd for the 23d of *April*; tho', both in the *Greek* and *Latin* Martyrologies, there be divers beſides *Him* on that Day: Indeed I will not here determine any Thing; yet it may well be queſtion'd, I think, why *His* Name alone ſhould be ſo honour'd, as it is in the ſaid Martyrology, unleſs there had been ſome ſingular Honour given *Him* from this Nation. There are other Teſtimonies which might be brought to this Purpoſe; and upon the whole, there is great

* *Itiner. Hieroſ. L. 2. p.* 137.

† *In Bibl. Ben. Cant. Vol.* 36.

great Reaſon to conclude, that this Saint was in great Eſtimation among the *Engliſh*, even in the *Saxon* Times. After that the *Order* of the *Garter* was inſtituted, an Addition of *Honour* was alſo made to *His* Feaſt-Day, which is the 23d of *April*. For whereas anciently it had been only *minus duplex*, it was firſt in a Convocation of the Firſt of *Henry* IV. held under Archbiſhop *Arundell*, deſir'd *quòd feſtum* Sancti GEORGII *Martyris, qui* totius Militiæ Anglicanæ ſpiritualis eſt Patronus, *& penes quem in actibus armorum præ cæteris Sanctis habetur devotius & confidentius memoria inſtituatur* || *per totam Angliam feſtivè ac ſolenniter feriandum & colendum, ſicut cæteræ nationes ſuorum Patronorum feſta colunt.* What was here deſir'd did not then take effect, no more than other Things then petition'd for likewiſe. But afterward, upon the Inſtance of King *Henry* V. preparing for *France*, *His* Day was made *Feſtum duplex ad modum majoris duplicis*, by a Canon of the Convocation of the Province of *Canterbury*, held in *November*, 1415. For to that Time muſt thoſe

|| *Regiſt. MSS.* Arundel *Arch. Cant. part.* 1. *fol.* 53. *b. art.* 27.

Words in *Walſingham* be referr'd. *Eo tempore decretum fuit* (ſays He) * *per Cleri Concilium Londonijs apud Sanctum* Paulum *celebratum, ad inſtantiam maximè Regis nunc, ut feſtivitas Sancti* GEORGII *Martyris, ut duplex feſtum, de cætero celebretur*----As to the Diſtinction of *Feſta majora duplicia, & minora duplicia*, and the Explanation thereof, *Durand*, † as being very particular in this Point, may fitly be conſulted; and the *Engliſh* Reader, if he pleaſes, may be ſatisfied by conſulting Mr. *Aſhmole*, pag. 470. who likewiſe adds (a little before) another Teſtimony, omitted by Mr. *Selden*, quoted from *Hoſpinian*, ‖ of a Synod held at *Oxford*, *A. D.* 1222. forbidding the *minora ſervilia opera*, on St. *George*'s Feaſt-Day. And when the Number of our Holy-Days were neceſſarily reformed under *Henry* VIII. for the Practice of every Man's Labour in his Vocation, the Feaſts of the *Apoſtles*, of our Bleſſed *Lady*, (as the Words are before *Henry* VIIIth's Primer) and of St. GEORGE, and the four *Evangeliſts*, and *Mary Magdalen*, are (beſides ſome other more emi-

* *Sub init. Hen.* 5.

† *Rat. Divin. off. L.* 7. *C.* 1.

‖ *De Orig. Feſt. Chriſt. C.* 4. *fol.* 17. *a.*

eminent Feaſt-Days) excepted in the Reformation. Thus it remained a general Holy-Day, until by Act of Parliament, under *Edward* VI. thoſe Days, which we now keep holy in our Church, were ſingl'd out only for Holy-Days to *be kept, and commanded to be kept, provided always* (as the Words of the Act are*) *that it ſhall be lawful for the Knights of the Garter, and to every of them, to keep and celebrate ſolemnly the Feaſt of their Order, commonly call'd St.* GEORGE'S Feaſt, *yearly from henceforth the* 22*d*, 23*d*, *and* 24*th Days of* April, *and at ſuch other Time and Times, as yearly ſhall be thought convenient by the King's Highneſs, his Heirs and Succeſſors; and the ſaid Knights of the ſaid Honourable Order, or any of them now being or hereafter to be: Any Thing in this Act heretofore mention'd to the contrary notwithſtanding.* This Act was repeal'd in Queen *Mary*'s Time, but 'tis ſince reviv'd.

* 5 & 6 *Ed.* 6. *Cap.* 3.

NOTWITHSTANDING theſe Teſtimonies both of the *Eaſtern* and *Weſtern* Churches, and the ſo ancient and continued Honour done to this Mar-

tyr, and that by our Nation in particular, there have been ſome, and very learned Men too, * who in our Age (for we find not any of them ancienter) while they have fervently oppoſed the Invocation of *His* Name with others, have deny'd *Him* alſo any Being at all; unleſs you will, with them, make *Him* the ſame with the *Arian* Heretick *George* Biſhop of *Alexandria*, cruelly murder'd there, of whom *Ammianus Marcellinus*, * *Athanaſius*, † and *Gregory Nazianzen*, ‖ frequently make mention. This *Arian*, they ſay, began to be worſhip'd as a Saint, was alſo of *Cappadocia*, and that the St. GEORGE we ſpeak of, as the Patron Saint of the *Engliſh*, is mention'd in no good Story of the Church, but grew in Legends to be *that He* is now made, out of that Heretick's Name of *Alexandria*. And they would ſo have the whole Picture of our St. GEORGE (whereof more preſently) to be Symbolical, and not Hiſtorical. I confeſs, as to ſeveral Circumſtances of His Martyrdom, there is no Reaſon we ſhould believe them as they are related,

* *V. Rainold. de Idol. L.* 1. *C.* 5, *&c.*

* *L.* 22.
† *Apol.* 2. *& de fugâ ſuâ, &c.*
‖ *Orat. in laud. Athan.*

lated, being ſo incredible, ſo various, and ſo contrary, ſometimes, one to the other.---But then let it be obſerv'd, this is common to *Him*, with many other Martyrs, of whoſe having been Martyrs we doubt not, tho' their Miracles and many of the Circumſtances of their Sufferings be too incredible. The Queſtion is, whether there was one or no of this Name, that ſuffer'd Death in the Perſecutions as a Martyr; and that at *Lydda* or *Dioſpolis*, being a *Cappadocian*---As to the Objection of there being no good Stories of *Him*, we grant, that of the Time wherein *He* is ſuppos'd to have ſuffer'd, we have no Hiſtorian of the Church, but *Euſebius*, who mentions not the Name of one Martyr, in divers hundreds that He tells us of, in general: And that Omiſſion, as I have obſerv'd already, can be no juſt Objection againſt the Being of *this* Saint. But the many and ancient Dedications of Churches to *Him*, *old* Relations of *His* Miracles and Apparitions, the peculiar Liturgies and Feſtivals in *both* Churches belonging to *Him*, and divers other Particulars

before-mention'd or deſign'd of *Him*, (His being a Martyr having been never, till of late, queſtion'd) may ſupply the full Weight of the beſt Eccleſiaſtical Story that could have been left of *Him*. And as to the Arguments brought againſt *Him*, from the Name of that *Arian* of *Alexandria*, as if Poſterity had turn'd that Heretick into this Martyr, and ſo created *Him* with a Fiction of Miſtaking; there is no other Warrant for any ſuch Oppoſition, but meer Fancy. For 'tis plain by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, that the *Arian George* was a *Cilician*, not a *Cappadocian*; tho' he came indeed, being ſent for, out of *Cappadocia*, as we know out of *Athanaſius*. Neither is there any thing in the Relations of them, common to them *both*, but the Name only of *Cappadocia*, which to the one was a Place of former Abode, to the other both of Abode and Birth, as it is uſually taken. Neither does it appear, that the *Arian* was ever worſhipp'd, or begun to be worſhipp'd as a Saint; nor does the Place brought to prove ſo much

out

out of *Epiphanius* || warrant with any Colour any ſuch Matter: So that whether St. *George* were at all or not, depends only upon the Authority of the ſo *ancient* Conſent and Uſe of the Churches of the *Eaſt* and *Weſt*. And nothing at all that is deduced out of the Story of *George* the *Arian* of *Alexandria*, and apply'd to this of ours, doth in the leaſt degree, if rightly conſider'd, impeach the Truth of his Martyrdom. And, which is principally to be thought of here, the Martyrdom of our St. *George* is placed under *Diocletian*, about *A. D.* 290; whereas that Rage of the People in murdering *Him* of *Alexandria*, appears to be after *A. D.* 360; ſo that there intercedes 70 Years between 'em. Why then ſhou'd we *now* begin ſo to confound into *one* theſe *two*, who for above 1300 Years time, have in *both* Churches, with all publick Atteſtation, been kept ſo ſeveral, that as the *one* was highly worſhipp'd for a Saint and Martyr, ſo the *other* has been remembred only as a moſt wicked Heretick, and moſt different in his Life, Dignity, Death, and Age, from the other.

|| *Hær.* 76. *cont.* Αvομ.

But

But there is no need of engaging farther in this Matter, ſince whoever is minded to ſee the Hiſtory of St. *George* farther aſſerted againſt ſuch as will neither allow *Him* a Place in Heaven, or a Being in the Church, may find it both learnedly and judiciouſly maintain'd to his Hand, out of the venerable *Records* of *Antiquity* and *Church Hiſtory*, by the elaborate Endeavours of the late Reverend Divine Dr. *Peter Heylin* in a particular Tract. But to proceed to the other Particular we propos'd ſpeaking to, relating to St. *George:* And that was,

3. The Figure by which He is commonly repreſented; Armed on Horſeback, and the Dragon under *Him*; juſt like the Arms of the Emperor of *Ruſſia.* ----- And this is the Figure which is fix'd to the Collar of the *Order.* As to *his* being armed and on Horſeback, no apter Figure cou'd be made of *Him*, being ſuppoſed a Soldier and a Commander, as is before ſhewed. And the *Greeks* anciently ſhap'd him ſo, as appears in *Niceph.* * *Hiſt.* 8. *Greg.* * But ſome have thought that the Dragon was rather ſymbolically added,

added, than upon any Hiſtorical and Juſt Ground. It was as ancient a Faſhion as *Conſtantine* the Great, to expreſs the Devil in that Shape, becauſe He is *ſo* call'd in the Holy Scriptures. And therefore alſo did *Conſtantine* command his own Picture, as of one that triumph'd over the Devil, to be made with the Croſs over it, and a Dragon by him, thruſt through with the Sword, and tumbl'd headlong into the Sea; which, ſays *Euſebius*, ‖ was but a Figure of that in the Prophet *Eſay*; † *In that Day the Lord with his ſore and great and mighty Sword ſhall viſit the Dragon* (ſo the LXX render לויתן) *that piercing Serpent, even the Dragon that crooked Serpent, and he ſhall ſlay the Dragon that is in the Sea.* In other Figures he has ſometimes before him a Maid kneeling, which learned Men have conceived alſo to be only Symbolical, and to denote ſome Country or City only imploring his Aid, the old Faſhion being, as at this Day, to expoſe Countries and Cities in Feminine Shapes. And both for the Dragon and the Maid, I add here the Words of *Baronius*.

‖ *De vit. Conſt. L.* 3.

† *Cap.* 27.

* *Pictura*

* *Ad Ap.* 23. *in Martyrol. Rom.*

* *Picturâ illâ S. Georgii, qua effingitur Eques armatus, qui Haſtæ cuſpide Draconem interficit, juxta quem etiam virgo poſita manus ſupplices tendens implorat auxilium, Symboli potius quàm Hiſtoriæ alicujus opinor eſſe expreſſam imaginem: In nullis enim, quæ recenſuimus, S. Georgii actis antiquis, quicquam ejuſmodi legitur; ſed à Jacobo de Voragine, abſq; aliquâ majorum authoritate, ea ad Hiſtoriam referuntur, quæ adverſus Diaboli vires tanti Martyris implorent auxilium.* But, ſays he, *Non imus inficias S. Georgium*, (ſo it ſhould be, tho' miſprinted in the Edition at *Rome*) *ut Equeſtris militiæ militem, Equeſtri imagine referri conſueviſſe.* Some Paſſages there are of this Figure in the Duke of *Somerſet*'s Letters to *Stephen Gardiner* Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, and other ſuch reported in *Fox*'s Acts of the Church of *England*, which I omit here; as alſo what *Erhardus Cellius*, and ſuch more have of it: And I conclude with thoſe Verſes in that neat Poem of the Marriage of *Tame* and *Iſis*, where the *Thames* is perſonated thus ſpeaking to *Windſor* of this *Order*, with a ſmall Variation;

Cambden. in Atrebatiis.

---- *Cap-*

------ *Cappadocis tu clara* GEORGI
Militiâ; procerumq; cohors, chlamydata nitenti
Cincta Periſcelidi ſuras, te lumine tanto
Illuſtrat, tantis radiis perſtringit & orbem,
Ut jam Phryxæum ſpernet Burgundia Vellus,
Contemnat cochleis variatos Gallia torques,
Et Cruce conſpicuas Pallas, Rhodes, Alcala & Elba,
Solaq; militiæ ſit ſplendida gloria veſtra.

And thus King *Edward* III. out of the Affection He had for *Windſor*, was pleas'd to conſtitute *it* the Head and Seat of that moſt noble Order of the Garter, whereof himſelf became the moſt renowned *Founder*; and in Honour to which He there alſo founded the *College* of the *Chappel* of St. *George*. As He fix'd the Day of the *Feaſt* of that Order to that of the *Paſſion* (or according to the Church Phraſe, the Nativity) of his *Patron*; ſo as to the Place, wherein to perform its Solemnities, He made choice of *that* of his own Nativity; which for a long time after

after was inviolably obſerv'd, either upon the very Day, by the Church made ſacred to St. *George*, or elſe upon ſome other appointed by *Prorogation*, not long after: For which Way of *Prorogation* Allowance was given by the *Statutes* of the *Order*, and of which the Regiſters are full of Inſtances.---- But here, to proceed methodically, it will be proper,

In the firſt place, to ſay ſomething concerning the *Inſtitution* of this moſt noble *Order*, before we treat of its *Statutes*; the *Habit* and *Enſigns*; the *Officers*; the Manner of *Election* and *Inveſtiture*; the *Preparation* for, and Manner of *Proceeding* in the *Inſtallation*, &c. Of all which we propoſe to ſpeak as clearly and diſtinctly, and yet as briefly as poſſible.

And firſt, as to the Inſtitution of this noble Order of the *Garter*, there have been various Opinions as well of the *Occaſion*, as the *Time* of its Inſtitution. As to the *Occaſion*, the general Opinion is, the *Garter* of *Joan* Counteſs of *Salisbury* falling off as ſhe was dancing at a Solemn Ball; which King *Edward* taking up, and replying

to

to the merry Humour his Courtiers were in upon that Account, *Honi Soit Qui Mal y Penſe*, added withall, in Diſdain of their Laughter, that in a ſhort Time they ſhould ſee that *Garter* advanced to ſo high Honour and Eſtimation, as to account themſelves happy to wear it. But was this a true Account, 'tis ſtrange that Sir *John Froiſſart*, who was one of King *Edward*'s Courtiers, and who only among the Writers of that Age ſpeaks of this *Inſtitution*, ſhould aſſign no ſuch Original, not taking any notice of the falling of a Lady's *Garter*. Nor is there found any thing to that Purpoſe in our other Hiſtorians, for the Space of 200 Years, till *Polydor Virgil*, who liv'd in *Henry* VIII's Time, and who does ſo often deceive his Reader in other Matters, took occaſion to ſay ſomething of it. ..... Nor is there the leaſt Touch of it in any *French* Hiſtorian; and yet, when *they* were known to be ſo free in their Jeſts at our King *Henry* V's Deſign of invading them, 'twas natural enough to have expected a Jeſt or two upon the *Lady's Garter*. Add to this, that there

is

is not the leaſt Appearance in the Original Statutes of this moſt noble *Order*, to countenance the Conceit of ſuch a Feminine Inſtitution; no not ſo much as obliging the *Knights Companions* to defend the Quarrels of Ladies, as the Rules of ſome *Orders* then in being did enjoin. So that in ſhort, as a late learned Writer has obſerv'd, * we may take this vulgar Opinion of the Lady's Garter *to be a vain and idle Romance, derogatory both to the* Founder *and the* Order; *firſt publiſh'd by* Polydor Virgil, *a Stranger to the Affairs of* England, *and by him taken upon no better Ground than* Fama Vulgi, *the Tradition of the common People, too trifling a Foundation for ſo great a Building; Common Bruit being ſo infamous an Hiſtorian, that wiſe Men neither report after it, nor give Credit to any thing they receive from it.* And yet has it ſo fallen out, that many learned Men, for want of Reflexion, have unwarily run away with this vulgar Error.

*Dr. Heylin.

Another Opinion there is, which refers the *Inſtitution* to King *Richard* I. tying a *Leathern Thong* or *Garter* about the Legs of a choſen Number of Knights,

Knights, when his Forces were employ'd againſt *Cyprus* and *Acon*, and well-nigh tir'd out with the Tediouſneſs of the Siege, to put 'em in mind of the future Glory that ſhould accrue to them, with Aſſurance of worthy Rewards if they overcame; and that after a long Interval of Time, and divers Victories obtain'd by him, the ſaid King returning into his Country, determin'd with himſelf to inſtitute and ſettle this moſt noble Order of St. *George*, on whoſe Patronage the *Engliſh* ſo much relied. ----Thus much indeed we find related in the Preface of the *Black Book*, but not in any Part of the *Annals* of the *Order*; nor can it plead higher Antiquity than the Reign of *Henry* VIII. becauſe written a little after the Time He reform'd and explain'd the *Statutes* of the Garter. But ſhould all that's ſaid be admitted, and that King *Richard* I. did make uſe of this Device in the *Holy Land*; yet that He thence took occaſion to frame a diſtinct *Order of Knighthood* afterwards, there is not the leaſt Mention, nor any Ground to imagine. So that all the Advantage can be made of it,

* *Hiſt. of St. George*, Part 3. C. 1. § 6.

is, that (as Dr. *Heylin* * affirms) we may warrantably be perſuaded, this Occaſion much heighten'd the Reputation of that *Saint* among the *Engliſh*, by which Means, in Proceſs of Time, the moſt Heroick *Order* of the *Garter* came to be dedicated to Him; and not that it any way contributed to the *Inſtitution* of it.

We may then venture to affirm, that King *Edward* III. had no Reflexion, either upon a *Lady's Garter*, or King *Richard*'s *Leathern-Thong*, when He firſt deſign'd the *Inſtitution*; but that it proceeded from a much nobler Cauſe, *viz.* that this King being a Perſon of a moſt abſolute and accompliſh'd Vertue, gave himſelf up to a prudent Management of Military Affairs; and being engaged in War for the Recovery of his Right to the Kingdom of *France*, in the Proſecution of which Enterprize, He had great uſe of the ſtouteſt and moſt famous *Martialiſts* of that Age, did thereupon firſt deſign (as being invited thereto by its ancient Fame) the Reſtoration of King *Arthur*'s *Round Table*, which He exhibited with magnificent *Haſti-*

ludes

ludes and general *Juſtes*, to invite hither the gallant and active Spirits from Abroad; and upon Diſcovery of their Courage and Ability in the Exerciſe of Arms, to draw them to his Party, and oblige them to himſelf.

Windſor, according to Sir *John Froiſard*, † was about the Beginning of the Sixth Cent'ry honour'd with the *Inſtitution* of this *Order of the Round Table* by *Arthur* King of *Britain*. Some ſay, the Number of Knights elected into that Order were 24 *; that not only *Britans* were admitted, but Strangers alſo of other Nations, || who out of a Deſire of Glory, came over hither, to make Proof of their Sufficiency in the Exerciſe of Arms with the *Britiſh Knights*; and that the general Qualifications for Election were, that they ſhould be Perſons of Nobility and Dignity, renown'd for Vertue and Valour, and admirably well-skill'd in the Knowledge and Uſe of Arms. ---- I ſhould not have taken ſo much notice of this *Order*, did not only our *Britiſh* Hiſtories, but ſome * of

† *Chron. L.* 1. *C.* 100.

* *Joſ. Michaeli Marquez en Teſoro Milit. de Caval. f.* 52.

|| *Enderbies Cambria Tri. p.* 2. *p.* 199.

* *Leland's Aſſertio Arturi, & White of Baſingſtoke.*

our *Engliſh* defend it. And it may add ſome Reputation to King *Arthur's Round Table*, by obſerving farther, that the like *Round Table* grew into great Requeſt ſhortly after the *Norman Conqueſt*, and continued long with us; being ordinarily ſet up at the grand Martial Exerciſes, call'd *Haſtiludes*, *Tilts*, or *Turneaments*; or as *Mat. Paris* explains it, * *Potiùs ludus militaris, qui menſa Rotunda dicitur.* The ſame was permitted by King *Stephen*, and much encouraged by King *Richard* I. and for the ſame End and Purpoſe, as King *Arthur* made uſe of it.

* P. 846.

And thus King *Edward* III. having deſign'd to reſtore the Honour of the *Round Table*, or (as ſome expreſs it ‖) *Ut Arturi memoriam refricaret*, held a Juſte at *Windſor*, in the 18th Year of his Reign, according to *Walſingham*. But there is an old MSS. Chronicle that has theſe Words, *King* Edward *in his 19th Year firſt began his Round Table, and ordain'd the Day annually to be kept* there *at Whitſontide*. And this Meeting (as Mr. *Selden* † has obſerv'd likewiſe) did in truth occaſion the *Foundation*

‖ *Vincen. Lupam de Magiſtrat. Franc. L.* 1.

† *Tit. of Hon. p.* 754.

dation of the moſt noble *Order* of the *Garter.*

ACCORDINGLY King *Edward*, conceiving no Place more fit than *Windſor*, did, upon *New-Years Day* * 1344, iſſue out his Royal Letters of Protection for the ſafe Coming and Return of *Foreign Knights*, that were deſirous to try their Valour at the ſolemn Juſtes by Him appointed to be held *there*, on *Monday* * after the Feaſt of St. *Hilary* next following (which happen'd that Year on the 19th of *January*) and theſe Letters of ſafe Conduct continued in force until the *Octaves* * of the *Purification* of our bleſſed *Lady* enſuing, being in the 18th Year of his Reign.

* Pa. 17. E. 3. p. 2. M. 2.

AT the time appointed, He provided a great Supper to begin the Solemnity, and then ordain'd that this Feſtival ſhou'd be annually held *there* at *Whitſontide*, as before obſerv'd: And immediately after theſe firſt martial Exerciſes were over (to the end better Accommodation might be provided for the *Knights* that ſhou'd afterwards come *thither*) He cauſed to

* *Pat.* 18. *Ed.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 39.

† *Walsingh. sub an.* 1344.

be impreſs'd * *Carpenters*, *Maſons*, and *Carriages*, for erecting a *particular* Building in the Caſtle, and therein plac'd a *Table* of 200 Foot † Diameter, where the Knights ſhould have their Entertainment of Diet at his Expence of 100 *l.* a Week, to which Building He gave the Name of the *Round Table*. By this Means He aſſociated to himſelf from moſt Parts beyond Sea the prime Spirits for martial Valour, and gain'd the Opportunity of engaging them on his Side in the enſuing War.

Now, tho' King *Edward* ſo far advanc'd the Honour of a *Garter*, as that the *Order* did derive its Title and Denomination from it; yet 'tis moſt evident, that He founded this moſt famous *Order*, not to give Reputation to, or perpetuate an effeminate Occaſion; but, as *Cambden* obſerves, ‖ to *adorn martial Vertue with Honours, Rewards and Splendor*; or as Dr. *Heylin* expreſſes * it, *to encreaſe Vertue and Valour in the Hearts of his Nobility; that ſo true Nobility* (as is noted in the Preface to the Black Book of the *Order*) *after long and hazardous Adventures*,

‖ *In Attrebat.*

* *Coſmog. L.* 1.

tures, ſhou'd not enviouſly be depriv'd of that Honour which it has really deſerved; and that active and hardy Youth might not want a Spur, in the Profeſſion of Vertue, which is to be eſteemed glorious and eternal.

'Tis farther obſervable from the Hiſtories in general of thoſe Times, that the *French* King, *Philip de Valoys*, in Emulation of theſe martial Aſſociations at *Windſor*, practis'd the like at his Court in *France:* For He ſet up a *Round Table*, and invited the *Knights* and valiant Men of Arms out of *Italy* and *Almaine* thither, leſt they ſhould repair to our King *Edward* III. Which, meeting with Succeſs, prov'd a Countermine to King *Edward*'s main Deſign; who thereby finding, that his Entertainment of *Stranger Knights*, upon the account of reviving King *Arthur*'s *Round Table*, was too general, nor did ſufficiently oblige them to Him; He at length reſolved upon a Deſign more particular and ſelect, and ſuch as might oblige and tye thoſe whom he thought fit to make his Aſſociates, in a firm Bond of Friendſhip and Honour.

AND having given forth his *own Garter* * for the Signal of a Battel that prov'd ſucceſsful (which with *Du Cheſne* || we conceive to be that of *Creſcy*, fought almoſt 3 Years after his ſetting up the *Round Table* at *Windſor*) He thence took occaſion of inſtituting this *Order*, and gave the *Garter* (aſſum'd by Him for the Symbol of *Unity* and *Society*) the Preheminence among the Enſigns of it; whence that ſelect Number, whom He incorporated into a Fraternity, are frequently ſtyled *Equites aureæ Periſcelidis*, and vulgarly, *Knights of* the *Garter*.

* *Cambden in Attreb.*

|| *Hiſt. Gen. d' Angl. p.* 670.

BY this *Garter* the Knights Companions *are admoniſh'd* (as we find it in the Preface to the *Black Book* of the *Order*) *religiouſly, ſincerely, friendly, faithfully, and dexterouſly to go through whatſoever they undertake; but not to undertake or attempt any Thing, contrary to the Oath and Statutes of the* Order, *neither to fruſtrate the Rights of Peace and Friendſhip, vilify the Law of Arms, or to proceed in any Thing farther, than Faith or Compact, or the Bond of Friendſhip will admit.* And thus have ſeveral Authors ſymbolically deſcanted upon

upon *this* and the *other* Enſigns of the *Order*.

'Tis here farther to be obſerv'd, that whereas King *Edward* III. had ſet on Foot a Title to the Kingdom of *France*, and in Right thereof aſſum'd it's Arms, He, from the Colour * of them, cauſed the *Garter* of the *Order* to be made *Blue*, and the Circumſcription *Gold*. And it may, without any Straining, be inferr'd, from the *Motto* [Honi ſoit qui mal y penſe] that He retorted Shame and Defiance upon him, that ſhould dare to think ill of ſo juſt an Enterprize, as He had undertaken for the Recovery of His lawful Right to that *Crown*; and that the Magnanimity of thoſe *Knights*, whom He had choſen into this *Order*, was ſuch, as would enable them to maintain that Quarrel, againſt all who durſt think ill of it.

* *Ex collect. W. Le Neve.*

Thus much then, as to the *Occaſion* of the Inſtitution of this noble *Order*; as to the exact *Time* of the Inſtitution, or in what Year of the Reign of King *Edward* III. cannot ſo certainly be deduc'd from our Hiſtorians: For the Difference among them, in

in this Point, is very wide. Sir *John Froiſſart*, who is follow'd by Mr. *Selden*, † and ſome others, places it in the 18th Year of the *Founder*'s Reign. But as Sir *John* in ſome Things, is known to have committed Miſtakes (that groſs one eſpecially concerning the Number of the firſt *Knight-Companions*) ſo here it may well be queſtion'd, whether He does not unwarily confound the Year of this Inſtitution, with that wherein the *Founder* renew'd the *Order* of the *Round Table*: *Windſor* being the Place for holding the grand Celebration of *Both*. Indeed Mr. *Selden*, in another Place, * notes, that this Inſtitution took its Beginning in the 24th Year of the ſaid King; and our induſtrious *Stow* (with whom, *Lilly*, *Speed*, and *Segar* agree) tells us, that the *Firſt* Feaſt of the *Order* was celebrated in the Year of our Lord 1550, which anſwers to the ſaid 24th Year of King *Edward* III. But *Pol. Virgil*, in the Series of his Hiſtory, places it after *Henry* Earl of *Derby* was created *Duke* of *Lancaſter*, and *Ralph* Lord *Stafford*, Earl of *Staf-*

† *Tit. of Hon. p.* 793.

* *Notes on Poly-Alb. Song* 15.

ford,

ford, which happen'd in *March*, 25th of *Edward* III.

THUS it appears, that our Hiſtorians took little Heed to tranſmit the true *Time* of ſo famous an *Inſtitution* to Poſterity; and their Neglect, perhaps, was the Cauſe why our judicious *Cambden* became ſilent herein: Yet how this Chronological Note ſlipt all their Pens, is much to be wonder'd at. However, for our better Satisfaction herein, 'tis highly probable, in the firſt place, that this *Order* was not brought to any Maturity, till after his glorious Triumphs over the *French* and *Scots*, in the Battles of *Creſcy* and *Nevil's Croſs*, and untill King *Edward* had *Calais* ſurrender'd to Him. And to put all out of doubt, the *Founder*'s *Statutes* (as we ſhall ſee preſently) fix the Time of Inſtitution to his 23d Year; ſo do likewiſe the *Statutes* of King *Henry* V. and the Preface to the *Black Book*; the ſame alſo is atteſted by *Leland*, * and affirmed by *Mills*, † and ‖ Dr. *Heylin*.

AND thus, according to an Invitation made by this famous King, for keeping the *Firſt* grand *Feaſt* of this moſt

* *Ad Cyg. Cant.*
† *Cat. of Hon.* 88.
‖ *Hiſt. of St. Geo. Part* 3. *C.* 2.

moſt noble *Order*, in ſending his *Heralds* into *Germany*, *France*, *Scotland*, *Burgundy*, *Hainault*, *Flanders*, and *Brabant*, there came over at the appointed Time ſundry *Knights* and other brave Martialiſts, out of Deſire to ſignalize their Valour; and, what made the Solemnity more glorious, King *Edward*'s *Queen*, attended with 300 of the faireſt Ladys, adorn'd with all imaginable Gallantry, were there likewiſe preſent.

AND in this Manner commenc'd this moſt noble *Order*; an *Order*, which (as Mr. *Selden* * expreſſes it) *exceeds, in Majeſty, Honour, and Fame, all Chivalrous Orders in the World.* It has been honour'd with the Companionſhip of many *Emperors*, *Kings*, and *Sovereign Princes* of *Chriſtendom*; The Number of *Knight-Companions* ſtill the ſame, as at firſt. And, what farther adds to the Reputation of this *Order*, ſuch is the judicious Compoſure of its *Statutes*, fram'd upon ſuch ſolid Grounds of Honour and Nobleneſs, that they afterwards became a *Precedent* to other *Orders* ---- And theſe *Statutes* of Inſtitution come now properly

* *Notes on Poly-Alb. Song* 15.

perly to be conſider'd in the next Place.

Statutes and *Rules* are as well the *Bounds* to determine, as *Bonds* to unite Fellowſhips and Societies together; and if *either* thro' Negligence fall into Diſuſe, or be unadviſedly broken, they readily open a Way to Diſſolution and Ruin. And therefore upon ſuch Conſideration we may preſume it was, that moſt famous, happy, and victorious Prince, King *Edward* III. after He had adviſedly determin'd the Erection of this moſt noble and renowned Order, did moſt prudently *deviſe and inſtitute* (as 'tis in the *Black Book* expreſs'd) *ſeveral laudable Statutes and Ordinances, to be duly obſerved and kept within the ſaid Order*; which being collected into one Body, are called the Statutes of Inſtitution. The Original of theſe was ordain'd to be ſafely kept within the Treaſury of the College of *Windſor*, but hath long ſince wholly periſhed; yet there is a Tranſcript of them recorded in the Reign of King *Henry* V. at the Beginning of the old Book, called *Regiſtrum Ordinis Chartaceum*;

ſtrum ordinata quociens ibidem præſentes fuerint, videlicet quâlibet vice quâ Capellam intrant Sancti GEORGII *aut domum Capitularem, pro Capitulo celebrando, aut aliquid ſtatuendo quod ad Ordinem pertinebit. Et ſimili modo procedent in vigilia Sancti* GEORGII, *per modum proceſſionis, proficiſcentes cum* Superiori *Ordinis, aut ſuo* Deputato, *de magnâ Camerâ Regiâ uſque ad Capellam, vel domum Capitularem, & eâdem ſerie revertentur. Sedebunt itaq; cum Mantellis & Garterijs in dictâ vigiliâ tempore cœnæ, tam illi qui cœnare volunt, quam etiam alii non cœnantes quouſque de magnâ Camerâ prædictâ conſuetum tempus fuerit ſeparandi. Sic etiam induti incedere debent in craſtino verſus dictam Capellam, & abinde revertentes, ac etiam tempore prandii & poſtea, quouſque* Superior, *aut ſuus* Deputatus *ſua Ordinis Inſignia depoſuerit. Sic etiam proficiſcentes ad ſecundas Veſperas & revertentes nec † tempore Cœnæ & poſtea ſicut in Vigilia induentur, quoad uſque* Superior *Ordinis tempus eſſe decreverit ſeparandi.*

† forte necnon.

IV. *Et ordinati ſunt* XIII. Canonici *ſeculares, qui tempore Inſtitutionis ſuæ aut*

aut infra annum proximum teneantur ad Sacerdotium promoveri; ſic etiam XIII Vicarii, *qui tempore admiſſionis ſuæ erunt Sacerdotes, aut ſaltem tempore proximæ Collationis Ordinum extunc ſequentis, celebraturi continuè pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum. Iſti autem prænominati* Canonici *præſentabuntur per fundatores* Ordinis *ſupra dictos, viz. quilibet fundatorum modernorum Cuſtodi Collegii ſuum Canonicum præſentabit. Ita tamen, quod ſi quis Canonicorum moriatur, nec ipſe qui eum ultimo præſentabat, nec quiſpiam alius Sociorum Garterii poſtea præſentabunt, ſed ſolus* Superior *Ordinis ad eundem Canonicatum extunc in antè pro perpetuo præſentabit. Et ſic eſt unanimiter concordatum de præſentationibus omnium aliorum Canonicorum ſolo* * Superiori *Ordinis reſervandis.*

* *Soli Superiori.*

V. *Item concordatum eſt, quod prædicti* Canonici *habeant ſuam Mantellam de panno coloris purpurii, cum unâ circumferentiâ Armorum Sancti* GEORGII.

VI. *Item ordinatum eſt, quod* XXVI Milites veterani, *non habentes unde vivant, ibidem ad honorem do* † *& be-*

† *Dei*

ati Georgii competentem habebunt exhibitionem, continuè Deo in Orationibus ſervituri. Et de Electionibus eorum Veteranorum *ordinatum eſt modo ſimili ſicut & de præſentationibus* Canonicorum *prædictorum, ſic quod* veteranorum *Electiones quemadmodum* Canonicorum *præſentationes ſoli* Superiori *Ordinis reſervabuntur.*

VII. *Item concordatum eſt, quod dicti* Milites veterani *habebunt ſua mantella de rubeo cum uno Scuto Armorum Sancti* GEORGII *carente tantum tamen* Garterio.

VIII. *Item concordatum eſt, quod ſi* Superior *hujus Ordinis, Sive Societatis, fortaſſis eſſe non poterit apud ſolemnizationem feſtivitatis Sancti* GEORGII, *Capitulum tenebitur, horâ terciarum ad ſolemnizandum feſtivitatem in Craſtino, ſumptibus* Superioris *Ordinis. Sed novas obſervancias aut Ordinationes non faciet* deputatus *hujuſmodi: Corrigere tamen & reformare ſibi licebit tranſgreſſores Statutorum Ordinis quæ ſequuntur.*

IX. *Item ſingulis annis in vigiliâ Sancti* GEORGII *ſit una congregatio omnium conſociorum Ordinis Sancti* GE-

ORGII

ORGII *apud dictum caſtrum de* Wyndeſore, *ſive ſint infra Regnum* Angliæ, *ſive extra, dum tamen illic commodè venire valeant, & ibidem debent apud ſervicium eccleſiaſticum intereſſe, & ſua mantella tempore celebrationis divinorum defferent ſeriatim in ſuis ſtallis exiſtentes. Et quilibet eorum habebit in Capella ſupra ſtallam ſuam galeam & enſem quæ in ſui memoriam & eccleſiæ tuicionem ibidem pro tempore vitæ ſuæ remanebunt, quemadmodum militaris Ordo nobilis hoc expoſcit. Sed in caſu quo feſtivitas Sancti* GEORGII *contigerit infra quindecim dies proximos poſt diem* Paſchæ, *ſit dicta feſtivitas Sancti* GEORGII *prorogata uſque ad illam diem dominicam quæ ſemper erit dies quintadecima poſt diem* Paſchæ, *ad finem quod quilibet ſociorum Ordinis illic valeat apud dictam Feſtivitatem rationabiliter convenire, non equitando per aliquem trium dierum proximò ſequentium diem* Paſchæ.

X. *Item quod conveniat in dictum locum in vigiliâ Sancti* GEORGII *horâ tertiâ, & ſi qui non veniant hujuſmodi tempore aſſignato* † *ne habeant excuſationem Superioris Ordinis aut ſuo Deputato*

† nec.

putato *acceptabilem, per* Superiorem *Ordinis &* Capitulum *taliter puniri debent, quòd propter hujuſmodi negligentiam, non intrabunt ad* Capitulum *illâ vice, ſed foris ad hoſtium expectabunt, nec vocem habebunt in aliquo quod in dicto* Capitulo *fieri* || *contingere illâ vice. Et ſiqui ad veſperas ante Principium non veniant, ſua Stalla nullatenus tunc intrabunt, ſed in baſſo, ante Stalla ſua, in conſueto loco* Ceroferariorum *ſe conſtituent, durantibus veſperis ſupradictis, ad quas non venerant tempeſtivè. Et pœna ſimilis ſtatuitur contrà non venientes ante inchoationem Miſſæ ſolemnis aut veſperarum in craſtino. Et quiſquis eſt qui ad celebrationem feſtivitatis non veniat, non habens excuſationem* Superiori *Ordinis acceptabilem, ſibi præcipiatur nomine pœnæ quod Stallum ſuum non intravit feſtivitate proximâ tunc ſequente, ſed ſe tenebit ante & extra ſtallum, in loco quo ſupra tempore primarum veſperarum, & tempore proceſſionis in craſtino perante tres cruces proceſſionales tranſibit, & redeundo in Chorum ſtabit in loco baſſo quo ſupra toto tempore Miſſæ uſque ad* Offertorium, *noviſſimè oblaturus. Et hujuſmodi pœnitentiis*

|| *Contigerit.*

nitentiis ſic peractis, incontinenti veniet ante ſtallum Superioris *aut ſui* Deputati *ſuperindè veniam petiturus. Et deinde dictus* Superior *aut ſuus* Deputatus *eum ad Stallum ſuum & primævum ſtatum reſtituet. Quod ſi à ſecundo feſto Sancti* GEORGII *anno proximo tunc ſequente abſque excuſatione* Superiori *acceptabili, aut ejus* Deputato, *denuo ſe abſentet exiſtens infra regnum* Angliæ, *extunc Stallum ſuum non intrabit, quoadusque infra dictam capellam apud Altare Sancti* GEORGII *unum Jocale obtulerit valoris* XX. *marcarum Monetæ* Anglicanæ; *Et extunc ſingulis annis inantea ipſam mulctam, donec reconciliatus fuerit, duplicabit.*

XI. *Item quod omnes* Conſocii *Ordinis, ubicunque locorum conſtituti, deferent Mantella ſua de blodio ſingulis annis, ab hora primarum veſperarum in vigilia Sancti* GEORGII, *uſque ad ſecundas veſperas in craſtino incluſivè, quemadmodum facturi eſſent, ſi cum* Superiori *Ordinis aut ſuo* Deputato *perſonalitèr intereſſent, toto tempore hujus feſtivitatis celebrandæ, dum tamen ſint in loco ubi gaudeant propria libertate.*

XII. *Item concordatum eſt, quod ſi quis dictæ ſocietatis incedat publicè ſine* Garterio, *quantocius fuerit exinde ammonitus aut notatus, cuſtodi & Collegio ſolvet dimidiam marcam, ſicut alii ante ſolverunt qui in eadem culpa fuere conſtituti.*

XIII. *Item, concordatum eſt, quòd, tempore* Offertorii *apud altam Miſſam, ſemper duo ex ſociis qui ſunt in ſtallis oppoſiti ſimul ad offerendum incedant. Et ſi ex eis quenquam contigerit abſentari, ſocius ſuus, qui ſibi deberet eſſe oppoſitus, ſolus & per ſe ad offerendum tranſibit. Et notandum quod* Superior *Ordinis tempore* Proceſſionis *in dicta capella tranſibit retro totam ſociorum commitivam.*

XIV. *Item, concordatum eſt, quod, in quolibet craſtino Sancti* GEORGII, *antequam ſocii mutuò ſeparentur aut recedant, celebretur una miſſa* de Requie, *pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum, & quod tota ſocietas ſit tunc ibidem integraliter, ſi non fuerit eorum aliquis rationabiliter præpeditus, vel ſi non habeat licentiam* Superioris *Ordinis aut ſui* Deputati, *antequam ab illic recedat.*

XV. *Item,*

XV. *Item, concordatum eſt, quod quilibet ſociorum dimittet ibidem ſuam clamidem, pro acceſſibus hujuſmodi repentinis, & pro obſervandis præceptis & monitis ſalutaribus* Superioris *prædicti.*

XVI. *Item, conventum eſt, quod, ſi quenquam ex dicta ſocietate ſive Ordine per dictum Caſtrum de* Windeſore *itinerare contigerit, pro honore loci intret, ſi commode poterit, nec ſit ex juſta & rationabili causâ præpeditus. Et quod antequam capellam ingrediatur, omnino clamide ſe induat, ita quod non niſi clamide indutus intret, &* Canonici *per tunc ibidem præſentes ſibi venient in obviam, & ipſum in capellam devotè conducent. Et ſi fortaſſis ipſum contigerit illic accedere horâ Miſſæ, expectet ad honorem Dei & Sancti* Georgii, *& audiat ipſam Miſſam. Quod ſi poſt meridiem veniat, intret modo & forma expreſſatis, & tunc expectet donec* Canonici *ſemel dixerint Pſalmum* de Profundis, *pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum, & ibidem offerat, Pſalmo dicto. Siquis autem ex dicta ſocietate per medium villæ equitaverit & Capellam non intret & offerat veluti concordatum exiſtit, qualibet vice qua hoc non faciat pedeſter tranſeat, virtute Obedien-*

tiæ, unum militare verſus dictam capellam, & offeret unum denarium, ob honorem Sancti GEORGII.

XVII. *Item, concordatum eſt, quod* Superior *Ordinis, incontinenti poſtquam mors alicujus* Sociorum *ſit ſibi cognita, faciat celebrari pro anima ipſius mortui Mille Miſſas, & quilibet* Rex *foraneus pro anima illius mortui faciet celebrari* DCCC. Princeps Walliæ DCC. *quilibet* Dux DC. *quilibet* comes CCC. *quilibet* Baro CC. *& quilibet* Miles Bacallarius C. *Miſſas. Et ſi* Superior *Ordinis aut alius quiſpiam hoc fieri non faciat, infra unum quarterium anni poſtquam ſit certificatus de morte, numerum miſſarum in toto ad quas ab initio juxta ſtatus ſui conditionem tenebatur, duplicare, & ſi medietas anni ſic à retro ſit, etiam eodem modo duplicare debet, & ita de tempore in tempus uſque in finem anni, & ſi infra annum fieri non faciat, annos eodem modo duplicabit.*

XVIII. *Item, concordatum eſt, quod quocies aliquis* consocium *Ordinis fuerit ſublatus de medio,* Superior *Ordinis aut ſuus* Deputatus *certificato ſibi de merito faciat omnes* consocios *exiſtentes infra regnum ſuum* Angliæ *qui accedere pote-*

poterunt, per ſuas literas admoneri, quod, pro eligendo novo Conſocio, *coram eo conveniant, infra ſex ebdomadas poſtquam certificati fuerint de morte in loco ydoneo quem* Superior *ad hoc duxerit aſſignando. Quibus omnibus ſic congregatis, aut ſex eorum ad minus præter* Superiorem *aut ſuum* Deputatum, *quilibet eorum qui præſens in electione fuerit novem de ſufficientioribus, quos omni ignominiâ & opprobio crediderit expertes, ſive ſint de ſubditis* Superioris *Ordinis aut alii foranei, ſibi non ſubjecti, Dum tamen partem dicto* Superiori *adverſantem non faveant aut defendant, nominabit,* viz. *tres* Comites *aut de ſtatu ſublimiori, tres* Barones, *& tres* Milites Bacallarios, *& iſtas denominationes ſcribet Principalis* Prælatus *Ordinis, ſcilicet Epiſcopus* Wintonienſis *qui pro tempore fuerit, & in ſuâ abſenciâ* Decanus *Collegii, vel* Regiſtrator, *& in* * *eos abſentibus antiquior* Recidenciarius *Collegii ſupradicti, & denominationes ſic factæ per omnes* Conſocios *aut ſex eorum ad minus ut præfertur, per eum qui eas ſcripſit,* Superiori *Ordinis aut ſuo* Deputato *monſtrabunt, qui de nominatis hujuſmodi eum præeleget & admittet cui major*

* *Eorum abſentia.*

major vocum pluralitas ſuffragatur, & quem ſibi ad honorem Ordinis & utilitatem regni & Regis magis videbitur expedire. Et in caſu quo nullus ſociorum ad electionem veniat modo ſequenti, veniet puniendus ſaltem ſi non juſta de cauſa fuerit impeditus. Si tamen cauſam abſentiæ juſtam & probabilem allegaverit, per Superiorem, *aut ſuum* Deputatum *debet approbari. Quod ſi cauſa abſentiæ reperta forſan fuerit minus juſta, & accitus ad electionem non veniat, ut præfertur, concordatum eſt quod cuſtodi & Collegio, nomine pœnæ ſolvat unam marcam, & cum proximò fuerit in Capitulo ſedebit ante* Superiorem *Ordinis aut ſuum* Deputatum, *& totam ſocietatem, in medio Capituli ſuper terram, quouſq; per* Superiorem *aut ſuum* Deputatum, *& ſocietatem fuerit reconciliatus.*

XIX. *Item, concordatum eſt, quod in caſu quo aliquis Militum dictæ ſocietatis* Garterii *moriatur, & in ejus locum alius eligatur, quantocius poſt electionem electus habebit* Garterium, *in ſignum quod eſt unus ſociorum* Garterii, *& habebit* Mantellum *ſibi pro ſuo habitu liberatum, quando in ſtallum ſuum inducetur, & non ante; Et in caſu quo moriatur priuſquam*

quam fuerit inſtallatus, non nominabitur unus fundatorum ex quo non habet plenariam poſſeſſionem ſui ſtatus, ymmo habebit medietatem Miſſarum prædictarum, pro eo quod habuit liberatam Garterii, *& penitus nichil magis. Et ſi talis electus non veniat ad dictum locum cum omni celeritate accommoda poſt receptionem* Garterii, *ut inſtalletur, & ſignanter infra annum poſt ejus electionem, ſi ſit habitans infra regnum* Angliæ, *& non habeat excuſationem* Superiori *aut ſuo* Deputato *& ſocietati* Garterii *acceptabilem, electio de eo facta ſit prorſus irrita & inanis, & exinde* Superior *Ordinis aut ſuus* Deputatus, *unà cum ſocietate, ad novam electionem procedat. Et nec enſis nec galea alicujus electi quouſq; veniat infra Caſtrum ſupra ſtallum ſuum figentur, ſed exteriùs ante ſuum ſtallum; ad finem, quod ſi ipſe electus ad Caſtrum non veniat, ut præfertur, enſis ſuus & galea non indecenter erunt depoſita de ſublimi, ſed ut Militaris honor ſervet illibatus, removebuntur extra chorum curialiter & honeſtè, & remanebunt extunc ad opus publicum & uſum Collegii ſupradicti.*

* Servetur.

XX. *Item,*

XX. *Item, concordatum eſt, quod omnes foranei qui in ſocietatem dicti Ordinis* Garteru *elligentur,* † *per* Superiorem *Ordinis de ſuâ electione certificentur, &* Garterium *atq;* Mantellum *&* Statuta *Ordinis, ſub communi Sigillo, cum omni celeritate accommodâ ſumptibus tamen* Superioris *Ordinis, tranſmittantur; Et omnia* ‖ *certificentur foranei infra quatuor menſes continuos à tempore electionis de ſe factæ; Ad finem quod deliberare valeant ex tenore Statutorum, ſi electioni hujuſmodi voluerint conſentire. Et etiam quod omnes hujuſmodi foranei, ſic electi, cujuſcumq; conditionis ſtatûs aut dignitatis exiſtant, infra ſpacium octo menſium poſt certificatam ſibi electionem per* Superiorem *Ordinis aut ſuum* Deputatum, *& receptionem* Garteri, *mittant unum* Procuratorem *ſufficientem, ſecundum quod ſtatui electi hujuſmodi videbitur convenire; proviſo tamen quod* Procurator *hujuſmodi, inſtallandus in locum ſuum, ſit* Miles, *expers omnis opprobrii, qui tempore ſui adventûs ex cauſa hujuſmodi ſecum deferet ex parte mittentis unum* Mantellum *Ordinis, de ſerico blodio, & etiam enſem & galeam, penes Collegium*

† *Elegentur.*

‖ *Omnino.*

gium ipſum remanſura. Quod quidem Mantellum *ponetur ſuper Brachium dextrum* Procuratoris *hujuſmodi, per* Superiorem *Ordinis aut ſuum* Deputatum, *tempore inſtallationis ſuæ ſupradictæ, & illud tenebit ſuper dictum brachium ſuum ad horas Canonicas proximas poſt inſtallationem accipiendam, nomine Domini ſive Magiſtri ſui ſupradicti. Dictus autem* Procurator *inſtallatus* Mantellum *hujuſmodi poſtea non portabit, nec debet* Capitulum *intrare, nec ibidem vocem habere, virtute cujuſcumq; poteſtatis ſibi attributæ. Et ſciendum eſt quod hujuſmodi favor Inſtallationis per* Procuratorem *ſolis foraneis exhibetur, qui quidem non poterunt hâc de causâ perſonaliter advenire, ad finem quod ſint participes Miſſarum & devotarum Orationum Ordinis, quarum mediate* * *carerent, ſi inſtallati non eſſent antequam morerentur.*

* Medietate.

XXI. *Item, concordatum eſt, Quod ſi aliquis* Comes, Baro, *aut* Miles Bacallarius *dicti Ordinis decedat; Ipſe qui ſucceſſurus eſt in locum ſuum, ſive ſit* Comes, *ſive* Baro, *aut* Miles Bacallarius, *tenebit idem ſtallum quod tenuit ſuus Prædeceſſor, cujuſcunque fuerit dignitatis*

nitâtis, nec ullus eligendus hanc ſeriem mutabit, præter Principem Galliæ, *qui ſemper tenebit ſtallum ex oppoſito* Superiori *Ordinis, poſtquam fuerit electus, Ita quod ex caſu* Comes *occupare poteſt ſtallum* Militis, *& è contrà. Et iſtud eſt Ordinatum, ut ſciatur qui fuerint* Primævi Fundatores Ordinis.

XXII. *Item, concordatum eſt, quod quilibet* Sociorum *Ordinis, primo tempore ſui ingreſſus, dabit aliquid certum, ſecundum eminentiam ſui ſtatûs, in ſuſtentationem* Canonicorum *&* pauperum Veteranorum Militum, *ibidem commorantium, ac etiam in augmentum elimoſinarum, quæ inibi perpetuò Ordinantur; ſcilicet* Superior *Ordinis* xl *marcas.* Rex foraneus xx *libras;* Princeps Galliæ xx *marcas; quilibet* Dux x *lib. quilibet* Comes x *marcas; quilibet* Baro, *centum ſolidos, & quilibet* Miles Baccallarius v *marcas. Et iſta donaria pia ſunt ideo conſtituta, ut ingrediens hunc Ordinem Militarem per hoc dignius optineat nomen, titulum, & privilegium unius fundatorum. Dignum enim & conveniens arbitratur, ut qui aggregatur numero Fundatorum* * *aliquid hujus rei*

* *Aliquid hujus rei ſeu nominis intuitu.*

ſe

ſe nominis in tutu largiatur. Et quouſque ſummæ hujuſmodi pecuniarum per quemlibet juxta diviſionem iſtam in primo ejus † intractatu ſint ſolutæ, nec galea nec enſis ingredientis hujuſmodi ſupra ſtallum figentur. Et eſt ſciendum quod Superior *Ordinis tenebitur ſolvere pro ſumptibus introitus cujuſlibet* Extranei *qui eligetur, tempore inſtallationis ſuorum* Procuratorum.

† Introitu.

XXIII. *Item, Concordatum eſt, quod quamtocius quo aliquis ſocietatis ſive Ordinis hujus, ex primævis Fundatoribus moriatur, Scutum unum Armorum ſuorum factum de Metallo, & galea ſua, ſint fixa retro tergum in ſtallo ſuo. Et alii Fundatores qui poſteà ſuccedunt, habebunt ſcuta ſua & galeas modo conformi ſituata; ſubtus tamen aliqualiter primævos Fundatores. Sua etiam Scuta & galeæ nòn erunt || precie ita magno, ſicut primorum Fundatorum.*

|| Precii ita magni.

XXIV. *Item quod quilibet ingrediens promittat & juret perſonaliter, vel per* Procuratorem *ydoneum & ſufficientem, nomine ſuo inſtallandum, de bene & fideliter obſervando pro viribus ſtatuta Ordinis. Et advertendum eſt, quod nullus, per* Procuratorem *inſtallationem recipiet*

recipiet niſi duntaxat Foranei, *qui ob hanc cauſam commodè accedere non poterint in perſonis.*

XXV. *Item, Concordatum eſt, quod in caſu quo* Superior *Ordinis ſit extra regnum ſuum Angliæ tempore Inſtallationis alicujus ſociorum* Garterii, *vel forſan peragere non poterit perſonaliter, quæ tunc ſibi ex officio incumbunt, committere poſſit uni* Sociorum *ejuſdem Ordinis ſuas vices* * *ad plenariam in hac parte poteſtatem, ea perficiendi & excquendi, quæ, ſi preſens eſſet, ſuo proprio miniſterio pertinerent.*

* *Ac.*

XXVI. *Item, Concordatum eſt, quod fiat commune* Sigillum, *quod erit in cuſtodia illius quem* Superior *Ordinis ad hoc voluerit aſſignare.*

XXVII. *Item quod quilibet* Conſociorum *prædicti Ordinis de cetero habeant* Statuta *Ordinis, ſub communi* Sigillo *ſupra dicto. Et quod Originale Statutorum ſit cum eodem conſignatum, quod infra* * *theſauream dicti Collegii imperpetuum remanebit, & poſt mortem cujuſcunq; Conſocii Ordinis ſupradicti teneantur ſui executores ipſa* Statuta *Ordinis Collegio remittere, &* Gardiano *Collegii liberare.*

* *Theſaurum.*

XXVIII. *Item,*

XXVIII. *Item, concordatum eſt, quod nullus Militum Ordinis Sancti* GEORGII *& de ſocietate* Garterii *exeat Regnum* Angliæ, *abſque* * *ſitu & licencia dicti* Superioris. *Et eſt ideò concordatum, quod ſi aut aliqua expeditio Militaris contingat, aut aliquid aliud quod ad honorem Militarem cedere conſpicitur,* Superior *Ordinis, de ſua gratia,* Conſocios *Ordinis hujuſcemodi actibus militaribus ceteris quibuſcumq; tenebitur anteferre.*

* Scitu

XXIX. *Item quod nullus* Sociorum *Ordinis contra alium* Conſocium *levet arma, niſi in guerra Domini ſui legei, vel in propria juſta querela. Et ſi contingat quod aliquis* Sociorum *Ordinis retineatur cum aliquo domino, aut alicujus domini partem teneat vel querelam, & pars adverſa poſteà fortè deſideret aliquem alium ſociorum Ordinis ad defenſionem ſuæ cauſæ contrariæ ſecum retinere: nullus talis* Socius *ſecundariè deſideratus ad hoc conſenciat, ſed ſemetipſum teneatur excuſare pro eo quòd* Conſocius *ſuus primitus ex parte adverſa retentus fuerit vel armatus; & tenebitur propterea quilibet* Sociorum *Ordinis, quando cum aliquo retinetur, excipere &*

 paciſci,

paciſci, quod de omni ſervicio guerræ movendæ aut exercendæ abſolutus ſit penitus & quietus ſi & quatenus aliquis Conſocionum *ſuorum ſocietatis* Garterii *ſit perantea cum adverſâ parte retentus & ibidem armatus. Et ſi ipſe ſecundariè retentus non cognovit,* * *aliquis* Socionum *ſuorum* Garterii *fuerat primitùs ex parte adverſâ retentus, vel armatus, quantocius hoc ad ejus noticiam devenerit, teneatur omne hujuſmodi Servicium penitùs relinquere, & ſeipſum totaliter excuſare.*

* *Quod Aliquis*

XXX. *Item, omnes licenciæ Commilitonibus dictæ Societatis concedendæ terras circuire volentibus, honoris adipiſcendi gratia, per exercitium actuum militarium, & etiam omnia alia ſcripta tam Certificatoria quam præceptiva, quæ Ordinem* * *coſernere videbuntur, per* Superiorem *Ordinis emanare debent, ſub communi* Sigillo, *quod remanebit in cuſtodia unius* Socionum *Ordinis ad voluntatem* Superioris *prædicti. Et ſi ille qui* Sigillum *cuſtodit de preſencia* Superioris *ex cauſa rationabili ſe transferat, dimittet ipſum* Sigillum *in cuſtodia alterius* Socionum *ejuſdem Ordinis, præſentis tamen cum* Superiore, *quem*

* *Concernere.*

quem idem Superior *ad ipsius* Sigilli *custodiam duxerit assignandum. Ita quod* Sigillum *commune nullo unquam tempore sit de præsencia* Superioris *ablatum, quamdiu ipse* Superior *fuerit infra Regnum suum* Angliæ. *Et simili modo in absencia* Superioris *Ordinis cum prædicto* Sigillo *fieri faciet suus* Deputatus.

XXXI. *Item, concordatum est, si aliquis alius Miles dictæ Societatis sive Ordinis, ductus devotionis spiritu desideret apud dictum Castrum de* Wyndesore *continuè trahere suam moram, pro necessariis vitæ suæ & sua habitatione de proprio peculio faciat ordinari.*

XXXII. *Item, concordatum est, quod in casu quo aliquis* Miles *qui non est dictæ societatis* Garterii, *aut persona alia quævis donare velit aliquod annum* x^l^. *aut amplius, dicto Collegio, ad participandum orationum suffragia ibidem fiendarum: nomen Datoris hujusmodi intitulabitur in Kalendari Benefactorum (ut* Canonici & Milites veterani *pro eo valeant imperpetuum) deprecari.*

XXXIII. *Item, concordatum est, quod si aliquis* Canonicorum *moriatur, &* Superior *Ordinis sit extra Regnum suum*

Angliæ, Gardianus *ſive* Cuſtos *Collegii, qui pro tempore fuerit, exinde mittet literas ſuas ad* Superiorem *Ordinis, & Superior quem velit ad eundem Canonicatum valeat præſentare.*

XXXIV. *Item ſit unus* Regiſtrator *Ordinatus per* Superiorem *& ſocietatem Ordinis, qui inter cæteros de Collegio ſit ſcientior, & intereſſe debet in quolibet* Capitulo *Ordinis celebrando, ad regiſtrandum & inactitandum Electiones ſingulas, & nomina Electorum, punitiones inflictas, & punitionum cauſas, ad dictum Ordinem pertinentia, de Capitulo in Capitulum annuatim. Et ſit dictus* Regiſtrator *juratus in receptione ſui officii de fideliter regiſtrando, Et quæ in Principio cujuſlibet Capituli in Vigiliâ Sancti* George *annuatim celebrandi, ſint omnia Regiſtrata anni præcedentis ibidem publicè lecta, coram* Superiore *& ſocietate Ordinis; Ad finem quod ſiquid ſit malè conceptum & correctione dignum, valeat in formam debitam reformari.*

Besides theſe *Statutes* made at the Inſtitution of the *Order*, there are two other *Bodies* or *Exemplars* eſtabliſh'd ſince; the one by King *Henry* V. the other

other by King *Henry* VIII. The *former* made the following Additions, cauſing them to be inſerted in their proper Places, *viz.*

Article 3. That the Knights ſhou'd make their Obeyſance in the Choire, firſt to the Altar, and next to the Sovereign.

8. That the Deputy ſhould elect, if the Sovereign (when Abroad) had not ſix Knights with him.

9. That the Feaſt of St. George ſhou'd not be kept on St. Mark's Day, May Day, &c.

12. That when a Knight ſhould ride, He might wear a Blue Ribband inſtead of his Garter.

14. That the Order and Manner of offering up the Atchievements of deceaſed Knights, ſhou'd be ſuch as is there preſcribed.

20. That Knights abſent in the Sovereign's Service, might be inſtall'd by Deputy.

31. That the Sovereign ſhou'd take a Signet of the Order abroad with him.

34. That no Charge ſhou'd be admitted upon the College, by the Cu-

ſtos or Canons, without *the* Sovereign's Conſent.

THESE *Statutes* of Inſtitution, with theſe Additions, were tranſlated into *French* by the ſaid King's Order, and may be ſeen in that Language, in Mr. *Aſhmole*'s Appendix.

THE other Prince, *viz.* King *Henry* VIII. did properly complete the Body of *Statutes* belonging to this *Order*; ſome of them being obſcure, doubtful, and needing farther Explication, and others wanting to be reduc'd and contracted. Upon which Account, as alſo there being ſome Additions that well deſerve our Notice, the Reader will not take it amiſs, if I ſet down theſe *Statutes* of K. *Henry* at large, as they were put into *Engliſh* ſoon after their Eſtabliſhment.

The

The Statutes and Ordinances of the moſt Noble Ordre of Saint *George*, named the *Gartier*, Reformed, explained, declared, and renewed by the mooſt High, moſte excellent, and mooſte puiſſant Prince *Henry* the viii. by the Grace of God Kyng of *England* and of *Fraunce*, Defenſor of the Faith, Lorde of *Irland*, *&c.*

Whereas the mooſt famous, mooſt happieſt, and victorious Prynce, Edwarde, the thirde of that Name, his Noble Progenitour ſomtyme Kyng of England and of Fraunce, and Lorde of Irland &c. To th' onnoure of Almighti God, and of the bleſſed and immaculate Virgyn Marie, and the bleſſid Martir Sainte George, Patron of the right noble Roiame of England; and of Saynt Edwarde, Kyng and

Confessour; To the Exaltation of the holy Faith Catholique Ordeyned, Established, created, and founded, within the Castel of Wyndesore, a company of xxvi. Noble and Worthi Knyghtes, for to be of the said moost Noble Orde of Saynt George, named the Gartier, and for the honorable continuance, augmentation, and interteyning of the same.

The seid moost victorious Kyng did devyse and institute divers honorable Estatuts, and laudable Ordinances for to be observed and kept by the cobrethern and confreres Knyghtes and Compaynons of the said moost Noble Order; among the which Estatutis been certeyne doubtis and ambiguities, which to be more playnly declared, interpreted, and extended, it is thought right necessary and expedient. And that certeyne other new Ordinances and Articles be to the said Statutes added and adjoyned. Wherefore the said moost excellent and victorious Prynce Henry the viii. Kynge of England and of France Defensor of the Faith and Lord of Irland, and Soveragne of the said moost Noble Order,

and

and for the right singular Love, good zeal, ardent and intier affection, that his royal Majestie hath and bearith to the said moost Noble Order, and to the estate of Chivalrie and Knyghthod: And for the honorable contynuance and encreasing of the same: And also at the humble requeste and instante desire of the Knyghts and Companyons of the said Noble Order, And by their advyse, councell, and assent, the xxiii. day of April, in the year of grace M. D. XXII. and of his moost noble reign the viii. yere, made interpretacion and declaracion of the Obscurities, doubtis, and ambiguities of the said Estatutes, Ordinances, Interpretacions, declaracions, reformacions, with their additions aforesaid, after the trew intencion of them, shall be from hensforth observed, kept, and ensued, by the Soverayne and the Knyghtes Confreres and Companyons of the said Noble Order, in manner and fourme followyng.

I. Firste, It is ordened and accorded, that the Kyng, and his Heires and Successors Kyngs of England, shall be for evermore Soveraynes of the

ſaide mooſt Noble Order, and amiable Companye of Saynt GEORGE, named the Gartier, to the which Soverayn, and to his Heirs and Succeſſours ſhall apperteine the declaracion, ſolucion, determinacion, interpretacion, Reformacion, and diſpoſition of all cauſes concernyng and towchyng any thyng of Obſcuritie or dowbte conteyned in the Statutes of the ſaid mooſt Noble Order.

II. Item, it is accorded that none ſhall be elected and choſen for to be Felow or Companion of the ſaid mooſt Noble Order, excepte that he be a Gentilman of blood, and that he be a Knyghte, and without roproche. And that the Knyghtes of the ſaid Noble Order from hensforth ſhall not name any perſon in their Election to be Felow or Companyon of the ſaid Noble Order, in whome they ſhall thynke or extiem in their conſcience to have ſpotte of Reproche. And as towchyng the declaration of a Gentilman of blode, it is declared and determined, that he ſhall be deſcended of three decentis of Nobleſſe, that is to ſay, of name and of armes, bothe of his Father's ſide, and

and also of his Mother's side, and as towching or concernyng any maner of reproche, forasmoche as there be divers and many sundri poyntis of reproche, there shall be here declared but three poyntis of them oonly, as is declared in manner and fourme folowing.

The first poynt of Reproche ys, that if any Knyght, (as God defende) be convaynqued, or attaynted of errour against the Cristen Faith Catholique, or had for any suche Offence suffred any payne or punicion publique.

The second poynt of Reproche is, that if any Knyght (as God defende) had bene arrayned, convicted, or attainted of High Treason.

The third poynt of Reproache is, that if any Knyght departe, or flee away from batayle, or journei, beyng with his Soverayne Lord, his Lieutenant or Deputie, or other Capetayne, havyng the Kyng's power Royal and auctoritie; and whereas Banners, Estandatz, or Pennons have bene displaied, and that thei preceded to fight, he that then reniously and cowardly flieth or departith away from thens, ought to be estiemed and judged to

have

have reproche, and never worthi to be electe Knyght, or Felow of the said Company. And if it fortune, that any Knyght of the said Company (as God forbidde) do commyte any suche reproche, that then he shall be departed and disgraded of the said Order, at the nexte Chapiter ensuyng, if it soo shall please the Soverayne and the Company.

III. Item, that every yere, upon the vigill of Saynt George, that is to say, the xxii. day of the moneth of April, on what day soever it fall on, and though no service of Saint George be celebrate or done, all the Knightis of the said Company, beyng in any place or places of their liberties, in what places soever it be, shall be bounde for to were the hole habit of the said Order. That is to wit, Robe, Mantell, Hudde, and Coller, from the owre of the fyrst Evensonge at the owre of tierce, that is, at three of the Clocke at afternone, untill the said Evensonge and other divine service, souper, and voydance, be done and accomplished; And lykewyse on the morrow, on Saint George's day at

mattens,

mattens, procession, * mass, and the seconde Evensonge, and all the said day, untyll that souper and voydance be done, as ys aforesaid.

* Morning Service.

IV. Item, that if for any causes, it shoulde please the said Soverayn to proroge the said Feast and solemnytie of Saynt GEORGE, or that the said Feast shuld be prolonged and proroged, to another day, that all the Knightis of the said Order, that shall be within the Realme of Englande, shall gyve their attendance the even and the day of Saynt GEORGE, on the parson of the said Soverayne, and shall fynde themselffes in his company, in what place soever he be within the said Realme of England; and they so gyveyng their attendance upon his said parsone, the saide even and day, shall observe and kepe the servyce of Saynte GEORGE, if the Ordenance and commaundment of holye Church doth suffre and permit it. And if th' ordenaunce of the Church doth not permitt it, in this behalffe, they be bounde to tary with the Soverayne, and heare such servyce as shall be than limited and ordened bi the holy Churche to

to be done and celebrated the said even and day of Saynt GEORGE, in observyng and keppyng, during the said daies, of all other Cerimonies, aswell in goyng to the Chapter upon the said euen, before Evensong at afternone, and the said day of Saynt GEORGE at afternone, before the laste Evensong; As also in weryng their hole habit, and every Knyght being in his owne stall, in keppyng the Devine Servyce from the tyme of the fyrst Evensonge of the said even, matens, and * Masse, unto the last Evensong of the said day, and the morow after ensuing, before the * Masse of Requiem, thei shall take their Mantells, upon suche Gownes as shall please them, and shall enter into the Chapter, if there be any election or other great affaires, before the said * Mass of Requiem, in usyng such Ceremonyes to this accustomed, as though they were present in the said Castell of Wyndesore. And in case that the said Soverayne be come and entred into the said Chapiter, and that some of the said Felows of the said Order be not entred, or come with him and shulde tary behynde, in case

* Divine Service.

* Divine Service.

* Divine Service.

caſe they that have not gyven and done dew attendance upon hym, ſhall abide withoute the doꝛes of the ſaid Chapiter, withoute entryng in to it, duryng all the tyme that the ſaid Soverayne and other Knyghtes ſhall be in the ſaid Chapiter foꝛ that tyme. And if ſo be that any of the abovenamed Knyghtes come to late to the firſt Evenſong of the ſaid even, oꝛ Mattens, * Maſſe, oꝛ laſte Evenſong, the ſaide day of Saynt GEORGE, he ſhall have foꝛ penance, that duryng the tyme and ſpace of ſuche devyne ſervyce, he ſhall knele oꝛ ſtande befoꝛe his Stall, in the Place of the Quereiters; and if he come not to gyve attendance upon the Parſon of the ſaid Soverayne, the ſayd Even and day of Saynt GEORGE, as is afoꝛeſaid; And that he have no lycence oꝛ other reaſonable excuſe, and that it be acceptable to the ſaid Soverayne foꝛ his abſence in this Caſe; the ſaid Knyght, that ſoo ſhall have done, foꝛ his penance, ſhall not come in his Stall at the next Feaſt enſuyng in the preſence of the Soverayne, noꝛ in his ſaid Stall in the ſaid College of Wyndeſore. And farthermoꝛe ſhall pay x^{l}. foꝛ to be converted

* Divine Service.

ted and bestowed to the use of the Ornamentes of the said Collage.

V. Item, if it chaunsed that any of the Knyghtes of the said Order, by leave or licens or otherwise, were in his howse or in any other place, at his libertie and fraunchise, the said even and day of Saynt George, he shall be bound to cause to be prepared a Capitall Stall, in the Church or Chappel, in the which he shall heare devine Servyce. In the Capitall Stall shall be sett and elevated the Order of Saynt George, named the Gartier, beyng within a Garter; and his propre arms within the Garter, also shall be set at a Stall, that shall be almoche in distance, after the Proportion and quantite of the said Church or Chappell, from the Stall of the said Soverayn, as is his Stall in the Castell of Wyndesore, and shall were his said habit hole, and shall heare the devyne service, suche as by the holy Church is ordened and limited for the said day, aswell the first evensong, Mattens, * Mass, as the latter evensonge. In doyng by hym first Reverence to the Aulter in the honor of God, and after to the Stall where is fixed

* Divine Service.

or

or ſett up the Armes of the ſaid Order, as well and as often at hys comyng in as at his goyng owte of the ſaid Church or Chappell; And alſo as often as he ſhall paſſe before the ſaid Armes, allwey excepte the Emperours, Kynges, Princes, Electors, The which may in this caſe ſo ordeyne their Seates and Stalles as yt ſhall ſeme them beaſt, and at their Pleaſure.

VI. Item if yt were ſo that without any prorogacion the ſaid Feaſt and Solempnyte of Saynt GEORGE were kept and celebrated the ſaid day and Even of Seynt GEORGE, in the ſaid Caſtell of Wyndeſore, and if it were not the pleaſure of the ſeid Soverayne for to be preſent, or that conveniently he may not be there in parſon, the ſaid day and Feaſt, at his ſaid Caſtell of Wyndeſore, That in this Caſe, in what place that his pleaſure ſhall be beyng within this his Realme of England, his Majeſtie may appoynte and commaunde ſuche Knyghtes of the ſeid Order, as beſt ſhall ſeme hym, there for to kepe Company and geve attendance upon the parſon, and to kepe all and lyke Ceremonyes as though they

were at the ſaid Caſtell of Wyndeſore; And they doyng the thynges aboveſaid ſhall be excuſed for their abſence of the Feaſt of Saynt GEORGE holden at the ſaid Caſtell of Wyndeſore for that yere.

VII. Item, it is agreed, that if the Soveraine cannot be at Seynt GEORGE's Feaſt, that he ſhall make his Deputy, by his Letters, for to kepe the Chapter upon Saynt GEORGE's Even, at the owre of tierce, the which is at three of the Clocke at afternone, and on Saynt GEORGE's day for to kepe the ſaid Feaſt, at the coſtes of the ſaid Soverayne, for the ſpace aboveſaid, withoute any new Ordenance to be made, habyng power to correcte and redreſſe all Poyntes of the ſaid Chapter, as for then ſhall ſeme neceſſary.

VIII. Item, that every one on Saynt GEORGE's Even, that is to wit, the xxii. day of April, a gatheryng together ſhall be made of all the Knightes of Saynt GEORGE within the Caſtell of Wyndeſore, That is to wit, of all them that ſhall be within this Realme of Englande, or withoute, that conveni-

ently

ently may come. And there they ſhall have the ſervice of Saynt GEORGE, and alſo ſhall were their hole habit of the ſaid Order, duryng the ſeid ſervyce, beyng ordinarily in theyre Stalls; and every of them ſhall have his Banner, Swoorde, with his Helme, and Creſte above his Stall, the whiche duryng his lyff ſhall abyde in the ſaid Chappel, for his honor, and in ſigne and knowledge, that he beres them in defence of holy Churche, as the Order of Knyghthod requireth. But in caſe that the ſeid Feaſt of Saynt GEORGE happen to fall within xv. dayes after the Feaſt of Eaſter, or upon any Fyſhe-day, or Faſting day, then it ſhall be proroged and prolonged at the Soverayne's pleaſure, as above is ſeid, if ſo be that the day of the ſeid Feaſt be not aſſigned ne ordenyd to be kepte the xxiv. xxv. xxvi. nor the laſt day of April, nor upon the fowre firſt dayes of May, for by cauſe of the impediment or let of devyne ſervyce ordened by holy Churche for the double Feaſtes of Sayntes Marke, Philipp and Jacob, and the Invention of the Holy Croſs of our Lord Jeſu Chriſte, nor at ſuche dayes as ſhall fall

the Assencion, or the Feast of Penthecoste, or any other Feaste of Solempnite, as is ordened in holy Churche, whereby the fyrst or seconde Evensonge by suche Prorogacions might be letted and distorbed.

IX. Item, that all the Knyghtis of the said Order shall come yerely in the said place of the said Castell of Wyndesore on Saynte George's Even at th'owre of tierce, the whiche is at three of the Clocke at afternoone, as it is aboveseid. And if thei come not at the tyme assigned without havyng a juste and reasonable excuse, that may be acceptable to the said Soverayne or to his Deputie, or otherwyse pardoned by the seid Soverayne of their absence by special Letters of excuse, in the whiche Letters theyr names and causes shall be wryten, or otherwyse shall have their pennance after th'ordenance and agreement of the said Chaptre. And the said Ordenaunce is suche that they shall not entre into the Chaptre for that tyme, but shall byde withoute the dore. And shall have no voyce in any thynge that is done in the said Chaptre, at that tyme alonly. And if they come not

to

to Evenſonge, before the begynnyng of the ſaid Evenſonge, they ſhall not enter into their Stalles, but ſhall byde below affore the ſaid Stallis in the Queriſters places duryng the ſaid Evenſonge. And like pennance is ordened for them that come not to the high * maſſe betyme and at Evenſonge on Saynt GEORGE's daye. And if there be any that come not to the Feaſte, and have not a reaſonable excuſe towarde the Soverayne or his Deputye, as it is above declared, his pennance ſhall bee that he ſhall not enter within his Stall the next Feaſt after, but ſhall byde below as it is ſaid at the firſt Evenſong, and ſhall goo in the proceſſion before all the * three Croſſes. And ſhall ſit below as affore is ſaid all the * maſs tyme untyl the Offeryng. And he ſhall offre laſte. And after his pennance ſo done, incontinent he ſhall come before the Soverayns Stall or his Deputie, and there he ſhall aske pardon. And after that the Soverayne or his Deputie ſhall commaunde hym to go unto his Stall in his fyrſt eſtate, and if he come not at the ſecond Feaſte, and be dwellyng within the Realm,

* Morning Service.

* Queriſters.

*Service.

without having any excuſation alowable to the Soverayne or to his Deputie, as is abovesaid, he shall not entre in his Stall from thensforth, untyl the tyme that he have gyven and offered a Jewell unto Saynt George's Aultar within the said Chappell of the valew of xx markes of Sylver of Troye, and fro thens forwarde he shall double every Yere the penaltie, unto the tyme he be reconsciled.

X. Item, it is agreed, that if any Knyght of the sayd Companye be founde in apperte withoute his Garter, That he pay anon after that the chalenge bee made to hym by any of the five Officers of th' Order or of the Warden of the seid College, a marke of Mony. Excepte he be boted for to ryde, that then it shall suffice to were under his bote a blew Ribande of Sylke, in signyfying of the Garter, and also provided that no Knyght of the sayd Order from hensforth do entre into the Chaptre without his Garter upon the payne abovesaid. And whosoever of the said Officers or Warden shall make the first chalenge, shall have the penaltye for his labor.

XI. Item,

XI. Item, it is agreed, that the Knyghts of the Ordre of St. GEORGE, alwey and as often as they shall were theyr mantels, they shall goo before there Soverayne every of them with his Felow, that is for aneynst him, ordinarily as they be sett in their Stalles: And if it shoulde happen that eny of them were not there present, his felow for aneynst hym shall goo alone. The whiche Ordre shall be kepte and observed as well in goyng in procession as ellis where in other places. But at the Offryng the Soverayn or his Deputie shall goo before all the Company, and the ordinarie Officers of the said Ordre shall goo as thei have bene accustomed, when any procession shall be done in the Chapter, Chappel, or ellis where. And for the ordre of the said Knightis for to sitt at the Table, for to take their refeccion by it, at Diner or at Souper, they shall sit all along on one side after their Stalls, and not after their state, except Children and Bretherne of Kinges, Princes, and Dukes that be Strangers, the which shall kepe their places and romes after their astate; and at their voiding and

going out shall abide and goo in order so as thei sat at the Table.

XII. Item, it is agreed, that every one of them, at the Castell of Windesore on the morow after the Feast of Saynte GEORGE, before the departyng of the Company, that the said Knyghtes, upon suche Gownes as shall please them at the Chaptre doze, shall take their Mantels and shall goo into the said Chaptre, and after that shall goo and here a * mass of Requiem, the which shall be solempnely songe for the souls of all the Felowes of the said Order, which be departed and deceassed, and for all Christen sowlles, and that all the Company be there present, without eny of them be lett bi a reasonable cause, or have lysence of the Soverayne or his Deputie before the departyng. And when it happens that for any cause of the voydyng of eny of the said Felowship, there shall bee certayne Banners, Swordis, Helmets, and Crestes, the whiche ought to be offered up before the offeryng of eny Sylver; the said Pachements ought to be offered, fyrst the Banner, by two of the said Felowship suche as the Soverayne or his

* Divine Service.

his Deputie shall appoynte or name, and after that the Swoorde shall be offered by two other, and likewise his Helmet and Creest by two other Knyghtes of the said Order, assigned by the Soverayne or his Deputie, and if any Knyght of the seid Order shuld decease the yere afore, then every Knyght beyng in the said Castell of Wyndesore, at the said * mass of Requiem, shall offer a Taper armed with a little Scuchion of the arms of the Knyght departed. And if there were more then one deceassed, that then be made for every of them a Scuchion of Arms and a grote sett nye to the light of the tapre, the which Scuchions and tapers wall be made at the coste and charge of the Knyghts of the said Order. * Divine Service.

XIII. Item, it is agreed, that all strangers, that shall be electe Felows of the seid Order, shall be certifyed by Letters of the Soverayne of their election. The which letters of Certification, with the Statutes of the said Order, under the common Seal shall be sente unto them at the coste and charges of the said Soverayne, in all diligence, and at the fardest thei shall bee

bee certifyed of this within foure moneths after the sayd Election, to th' ende that the seid Electe may advyse them by the said Statutis, if they will receyve the sayd Order, or no. But if the said Soverayne have greate and high lettes and busynes, that then he may deferre the Certification of the said Election at his good pleasure, unto tyme of opportunitie and convenient. After that the Certification have byn delivered, and that the Soverayn shall be certefied, that the said Electe will receyve the said Order; Then the Soverayne shall sende unto the said Electe, by his Ambassadours, his hole habit, with the Garter and Coller. And that all suche straungers, of what estate, dignytie, or condicion that thei be of, shall sende within vii. monethes after the reception of the said Gartier, Coller and Habit, and that he have certified the Soverayn to have receyved those thyngs, a sufficient Deputie or Attorney after th'astate of his Lorde and Maister, so be that he be a Knyght without Reproche, to be stalled in his place, the whiche shall bryng with hym a Mantell of blew Velvett of the order of that

which

which he shall send hym, and also his Banner, Swoorde, Helme, and Cresse, for to be and abide within the seid College duryng his lyff. And that the Mantell in the tyme that the seid Deputie or Attorney shall be stalled, by the said Soverayn or his Deputie, put upon his right arme for to holde the said mantyll upon his arme, and shall bee accompanyed and ledde by two of the Knyghtes of the said Ordēr, from the doore of the Chaptre unto the stall, and there beying shall make his othe, and shall be stalled for and in the name of his said Lorde and Maister, and the said Mantell abovesaid, the sayd Attorney or Deputie shall bere it uppon his right arme during the devyne Service, beyng sett in the stall of his seid Maister and Lorde, without beryng of it at any tyme after. And to have no manner of voyce in the Chaptre, or to come in it, in th'absence of hym that hath sent hym. And if he send not his said Attorney within vii. monethes abovesaid, without havyng a reasonable excuse which shall bee acceptable to the Soverayne or his Deputie, the election shall be voyde of hym. Except so be that the

seid

ſeid Knyght be lett and deſtoȝbed bi great affaires. Then he may ſend his excuſe to the ſaid Soverayne, oȝ to his Deputie, within a moneth after, and after his excuſe is, as the Soverayne oȝ his Deputie will allowe it oȝ accepte it, that then the ſaid Soverayn oȝ his Deputie may geve on to hym foure moneths more of reſpite, and if he came not oȝ ſent not his Attoȝney before that the tyme of the foure monethes be fynished, that then in this caſe the election ſhall be hole voyde from hym foȝ that tyme. And it is to be known, that this favoure is done and ſhewed to the ſtrangyers, the which may not well come in theiȝ pȝoper parſons, that they myght be ſtalled by Attourneys. To th' ende that they may be parte takers of the * maſſes, and all the pȝayers of the ſeid Oȝdȝe, foȝ they ſhulde fayle of the half yf they were not ſtalled befoȝe theiȝ deathe. And likewiſe it is oȝdened foȝ them that be new choſen and electe of the ſaid Oȝder, beyng in the Kyngs Warres by his commaundement, foȝ to enjoye of the benefytes of the ſaid ſtatutes, to that that ſhall appertayne all only to theiȝ ſtallacion.

* Divine Service.

XIV. Item,

XIV. Item, there is also ordened a Dean and Warden with xii. Canons seculers, the which shall be prist at their entryng in, or ells within a yere nexte folosyng; and also viii. Petticanons, and xiii. Vicars, also Prestes at their entryng in, or ells at the gybyng of the next Orders, or at the furdest within a yere after their presentacion. Also xiii. Clerkes, and xiii. Queristers, for to syng and pray unto God for the prosperity of the Soverayne and all the Knyghtes of the said Order lybyng, and also for the sowles of all the Knyghts of the said Order departed, and for all Crysten sowles, and the presentacion of the sayd Cannons shall belonge allwey to the Soverayne of the said Order. And the said Canons when any Knyght of the said Order is there present, within the quyer of the seid Chappell, shall sitt in the lowermost seates, where they be wonte to sitt at the Feastes of St. George. And in th' absence of the said Knyghtes the said Canons may sitt in the high seates next unto the stalles of the said Knyghtes.

XV. Item

XV. Item there bee ordenyd v. Officers appertaynyng to the said Order, That is to witt, Prelate, Chaunceler, Register, and Kyng of Armes, named Garter, and an huysher at Armes, named the Blacke Rod. The which shall bee receyved and swoyne to be of the Councell of the said Order, the secretes with alsoo their chargies and privileges shall expressely be declared in the Booke of the Ordenaunces of the sayd Officers.

XVI. Item it is also ordened, that xiii. poyr Knightes, that have not wher withall to lyve, for to have in that place their lyvyng and sustentation conveniently, for their good prayers in the honor of God and Saynt George, of the whiche the charges and privileges hereafter shall be declared folowyng the Ordynances of the Officers, and of their election is ordened as of the presentacion of the Canons, so that alwey the Election shall abyde to the said Soverayne. And it is agreed, that the pour Knyghtes shall have their Mantells of Scarlett, and a scuchion of th' armes of Saynt George withoute a Garter.

XVII. Item

XVII. Item it is agreed, that every Knyght of the sayd Company shall leave his Mantyll within the said College, for any sodayne Chaunses that myght happen for to kepe, holde, and observe all suche Ordinances, Precepts, and commaundements, whiche may be advysed in Chaptre by the sayd Soverayne. The whiche Soverayne by the consent and agreement of vi. Knightes of the said Order may, at all tymes and places, at his pleasure, sommon and make to be kepte Chaptre, for all suche causes, as it shall please the said Soverayne to name towching the said Order.

XVIII. Item, it is agreed, that if it fortune, that any of the said Company shulde come within ii. myle of the Castell, that he shall goo in, if he may, for the honor of the place, if he be nott busyed or lett by some juste cause, and that he take his Mantell before he entre within the said Chappell. And alsoo that he entre not in, but he have his Mantyll upon hym. And the Canons there beyng present for that tyme shall come to receyve hym, and devotly shall bring hym into the said Chappell; and

if

* Divine Service.

if it be in tyme of * Maſſe, he ſhall tary and heare * Maſſe in the honor of God and of St. George; and if it be at afternone, he ſhall come in in manner abovesaid: And there ſhall be ſaid by the Canons De Profundis, for all Criſten ſowles, and there ſhall offer and retourne unto his ſtall. And yf any of the ſaid Company ride thorowgh the Towne, and wyll not offre as it is agreed, that, upon his obedience for every tyme that he failleth, he ſhall goo one myle on fote from the ſaid Chappel, unto the ſaid place, in honor of Sayne George; And alſo for every tyme that he ſhall ſo fayle, he ſhall gyve a grote for his Offeryng. The whiche diſtaunce, for to come nygh unto the ſeid Caſtell, is two myles allonly and no more.

XIX. Item it is accorded, the xxxii. yere of our Soveraign Lorde Kyng Henry the Eight, by the grace of God Kyng of England and of Fraunce, Defenſor of the Faith, Lord of Irland, &c. upon Seynt George's day, the xxiii. day of Aprill, at a Chapter holden at the Paleys of Weſtminſter, by the Soveraign and the Companyons of the ſaid

ſaid Noble Order then there aſſembled; That as ſone as the Deth of any of the Company of the ſaide Order ſhall be certeynly knowen, every of the reſt, beyng no ſtrangiers, ſhall accordyng to the rates of their Degrees hereafter ſpecified, immediately upon a demaunde to be made for the ſame by the Regiſter, and the Dean, or one of them, to be by one of them employed in Aulmes deeds, as in mendyng of high wayes, or ſuche other works of charite, as the Kings Majeſtie from tyme to tyme ſhall lymite and appoynte, the ſeverall ſomes of Money enſuing: Furſt the Souveraign viii l. vi s. viii d. A Kyng of another Realme, vi l. xiii s. iv d. The Prince, v l. xvi s. viii d. A Duke, v l. A Marquels, iii l. xv s. An Erle, l s. A Viſconte, xli s. viii d. A Baron, xxxiii s. iv d. A Bacheler Knyght, xvi s. viii d. Of all which ſomes thus to be receyved, the ſaid Dean and Regeiſter, or eyther of them, ſhall yerely at the Chapiter preſent his accompte to the Kyngs Majeſtie with his true and juſt declaration of the dysburſyng agayne and defraying of the ſame. In that cauſe the partie, whoſe Porcyon

ſhall apere to be unpayde, ſhall in the name of a Payne adde unto his former dutye another thirde parte of the ſame, and ſo for every yere that he ſhall be behynde, to pay a thredde parte more than he ſhuld paye, if he ſhuld ſatiſfye his ordinary accordyng to the rate before expreſſed. And if the Dean or Regiſter or any of them ſhall not at every ſuche Chapiter preſent the Certificate of the Receipts and Payments in fourme aforeſaid, whereby the ſame may apere to the Souverayn and Companyons of the Order then preſent, or at the leeſt he in whome the defawlt ſhall reſt, ſhall in the name of a payne contente and paye immediatly, to bee employed abowte like purpoſe as afore the ſome of x[l]. for every ſuche defaulte.

XX. Item it is agreed, that if eny of the ſaid Companye die, that the Soverayne or his Deputie after that they ſhall have certification of his deth, ſhall be bounde for to ſend and gyve knowledge by their Letters to all the Felowſhip of the ſaid Order beyng within England, for to come and be with the ſaid Soverayne or his Deputie in what place ſoever it be, where it ſhall

pleaſe

pleaſe hym to aſſigne convenyently within vi. wekys after the certification of the death or deceaſe of the ſaid Knyght. The which allſoo aſſembled or at the leſt vi. with the Soverayne or his Deputie abovesaid, every of them that there ſhall be preſent come to the election ſhall name ix. of the worthieſt and ſufficient Knyghtes without Reproffe that he ſhall knowe ſubjectes to the ſaid Soverayne or others, ſo be that they holde no contrary partie or be agaynſt hym. That is to witt, three Dukes iii. Marquels, Erles, or of greater eſtate, iii. Barons, or banerettis, and iii. Bachelers. The whiche denominations the chieff prelate of the ſaid Order ſhall wryte, That is to witt the Byſhop of Wyncheſter for the tyme beyng, or in his abſence the Chaunceler, or the Dean or Regiſter or the mooſte auncient Reſidencer of the ſaid College in their abſence, and the denominacion ſoo done by all, or vi. at the leeſt, by hym that have written ſhall bee ſhewed to the ſeid Soverayne, or to his Deputie, that then ſhall choſe of them that be named, he that ſhall have the mooſt voyces, and alſo he that the

Soverayne ſhall exteme to be mooſt honorable to the ſayde Order, and mooſt profitable to his Crowne and to his Realme. And if there be any Knyght of the ſaid Order that doth fayle for to come to the ſaid Election, if he be not lett by a juſte cauſe; and that the ſaid cauſe of his excuſe ſhewed under his ſeal of armes be founde by the Soverayne or his Deputie to be juſte and reaſonable, then his excuſe to be accepted and allowed, and that if his cauſe be not juſte, and that he come not to the ſeremonies above named, it is agreed that he ſhall pay to the Warden of the College for to ſynge for hym that is departed xx s. ſterling, and at his nexte comyng to the Chaptre, he ſhall be before the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Company, and ſhall kneie upon the grounde in the myddes of the Chaptre, untyll the tyme that he be reconciled by the Soverayne or his Deputie, and the ſaid Companye.

XXI. Item it is agreed, that if any Knyght of the ſaid Company ſhulde departe, and another is choſen and electe, he ſhall have ſone after his Election the Garter, in ſignyfyeng that he ys one of the

the Knyghtes and Felowes of th' Ordre of the Garter, and his Robe and Hode shall be delibered hym in the Chapter howse incontinently, after that his Commission hath bene red before the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Company; and after that shall be led by two Knyghtes of the said Order accompaned with the other noble-men, And the Officers of the Order shall also be present, and his Mantell shall be borne before hym by one of the Knyghtis of the said Order, or by the Kyng at Armes of the Order. The which Mantell shall be delybered to hym for his habit, after that he shall have made his othe before his Stall and not before. And this done he shall retorne unto the Chapter howse, where he shall receyve by the Soverayne or his Deputie, The coler, and soo he shall have the full possession of his habit holely, except great Pynces straungers, the which may receyve their habit holely within the Chapter howse, as it hath been used and accustomed in tymes past, for the shortenyng of tyme. And if he die before he have Receyved hys habit, he shall not be named one of the Founders,

seyng that he lacketh to have full possession of his astate. But he shall have the one half of the * Masses above-named, for the delyverance of the Garter, and none other thynge above it. And if he soo chosen come not in all good diligence after the recepcion of the said Garter in the said place for to be stalled, and in specyally within the yere of his Election, if he be a Knyght dwellyng within the Realme, and hath none excuse reasonable, allowable, and acceptable to the said Soverayn or to his Deputie, and the Company, Then the Election shall bee voyde of hym, and the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Company shall goo and make another new election, and neyther the Banner, the Swoorde, nor the Helmet, nor Crest of hym so chosen be put upon his Stall within the Castell before his commyng. To th' ende that if he come not, his said Hachementis, as Banner, Swoorde, Helmet, be not taken down nor avaled, but honestly put oute of the Quyer, and the reast of other thynge shall abyde to the profitt and use of the saide Order.

* Divine Service.

XXII. Item

XXII. Item it is agreed, that if any of the Dukes, Marques, Erles, Viz-contes, Barons, Banerettis, or Bachelers die, That he that shall come after, and succede in his place and rome, be he Duke, Merques, Erle, Vizcounte, Baron, Baneret, Bacheler, or any of the astates above-named, he shall have the selfe same stalle that his predecessor had, and shall not chaunge it without he have especiall lycense or Warrant of the said Soverayne, allweyes all Emperours, Kyngs, and Pynces be excepted, the which shall kepe and holde theyr Stalles after theyr astate, and very nexte unto the Soverayne. And then by thys meane a Duke shall take the stall of a Bacheler, and a Bacheler the stall of a Duke, in signe and knowlege of the fyrst Founders.

XXIII. Item, if there be eny place or stall voyde, the Soverayn at his pleasure may advance and translate, by his speciall license, any Knyght of the said Company, in the said stall, so be it that it be more hyer then the stall that he was in afore. Alsoe the Soverayne onys in his lyfe may, if it please hym, make a general translation of all

the ſtates at his pleaſure, excepte of Emperours, Kyngs, Pynces, and Dukes. The which allwey ſhall kepe ther places and ſtalles, if not that they be tranſlated in moze hyer rome and ſtall, in the whiche tranſlacion the long contynuance in th' Dyze, and the prayſes, wozthynes, and merites of the Knyghtes ought to be conſidered and remembzed. The which Knyghtes from henſkozth in goyng and ſyttyng at all tymes, that they ſhall were their Mantels, ſhall kepe their places after the Dyder of their ſtallis, and not after their aſtatis, as is akozeſaid.

XXIV. Item it is agreed, that all the Felowis abobeſaid at their firſt commyng in ſhall gibe every of them a certayne ſomme, after their aſtate, foz the entertaynyng and mayntenance of the Canons and Pooz Knyghtes dwellyng in the ſeid place, and foz the almes dedes that is there perpetualli ozdenyd. That is to wytt, the Sobcrayne xl markes, a ſtraunger Kyng xxl. The Pzince xx markes, every Duke x[l]. every Marques viii l. vi s. viii d. every Erle x markes, every Vizcounte cxvis. viii d. every Baron and Baneret

neret cs. every Bacheler v. markes, and their Baners, Helmetts, Creſtis, and Swordis ſhalle not be ſett over their ſtalles, untyll the tyme that they have payed at their entryng the forſaid ſommes, every one after his eſtate and degree whereof he is. And it ys to witt that the Soverayne is bounde to pay for every ſtraunger that ſhall be choſen and electe, when he ſhall be ſtalled in his proper parſon, or by procurement, or attornay, and theſe gyftes be gieven to th' entent that every one of them that ſhall entre into th' Order be more worthy to have the name, title, and Privilege, of one of the Founders of the ſaid Order.

XXV. Item it ys agreed, that every Knyght within the yere of his ſtallation ſhall cauſe to be made a Scouchon of his armes, and hachementis in a plate of metall ſuche as ſhall pleaſe hym, and that it be ſurely ſett upon the backe of his ſtall. And the other that ſhall come after ſhall have their Scochons and Hachements in like manner; but their Plats of metall nor there hachements ſhall not be ſoo large nor ſoo greatte as they of the firſt Founders were, ex-

cepte

cepte ſtrangers, which may uſe their plates and faſhions at their pleaſure.

XXVI. Item it ys aggreed, that no Knyght choſen and electe for to be Felow of the ſaid Noble Order ſhall nott be ſtalled by procurement or attorney, excepte he be a ſtraunger, and may not well come hyther in his propre parſon for to be ſtalled, or other that is buſied withoute the Realme for the affaires of the Soverayn, or by his commaundement and lycence as it is above declared.

XXVII. Item that every Knyght, entryng in the ſaid Order, ſhall promes and ſwere faithfully to obſerve and kepe the poyntis and articles that here followeth, that is to witt, that to his trew powre he ſhall helpe, duryng his lyffe, and duryng the tyme that he ſhall be Felow of the ſaid Order, for to kepe, defende, and ſuſtayne the honor, quarrelles, rightes, and lordſhippes of the Soverayne of the ſaid Order.

Item, that with all his powre he ſhall enforce hymſelffe, and take payne honorably to entertayne and augment the ſaid Order. And if it happen hym for to knowe any thynge that were ymagyned

ymagyned or procured to the contrarye of the defence and reſiſtence of this with all his trew power he ſhall put hymſelf in more gretter endevorment.

Item, that well and trewly he ſhall accompliſhe and entertayne all the Statuts, poyntis, and ordynances of the ſaid Order, and of all this ſhall make a generall othe, all and ſo as though it were redde unto hym fra poynt to poynt, and article to article, and ſhall make the ſaid othe to the Soverayne of the ſaid Order or his Deputie, in ſweryng and promiſyng upon the holy Goſpellis for to kepe them and entertayne them, withowte any fraude or delacion. And upon this he ſhall towche the Boke and kyſſe the Croſſe.

Item, this done the ſaid Knyght ſoo choſen with dew reverence ſhall receyve the Garter, the which the Soverayne or his Deputie ſhall put it aboute his lyfte leg in ſaying theſe words, " Sir, the " lovyng Company of the Order of the " Garter hathe receyved you theyr Bro- " ther, lover, and Felow, and in to- " ken and knowledge of this they " gyve you and preſent you this preſent " Garter. The whiche God wyll that

" you

" you receyve and were from henseforth
" to his praise and pleasure, and to
" the exaltacion and honour of the
" said Noble Order, and of yourself.

XXVIII. Item, it is agreed, that in case that the Soverayne be out of the Contre, to the whiche he can not in proper parson do that shall appertayne to the stallation, he may gyve power and auctorite, by his letters of Commission, to two of the Felows, or to dyverse for to exercise it in his name.

XXIX. Item, it is agreed, that a common Seal, a signet of the armes of the Order, be made, the which shall rest in the custodi and keppyng of the Chanceler of th' Order, or of suche a Knyght and Felow of the said Order, as shall please the Soveryne to name and assigne; and if he that shall have the Seales in keppyng or custodi shulde departe or goo forth for any cause, xx. miles farre from the Soverayne, then he shall deliver the said Seals to the Soverayne, or to suche Knyght of the Order, or to any other parsone, that it shall please the said Soverayne for to ordeyne and appoynte. To th' entent that at no tyme the said Seals

be

be oute of the presence of the seid Soverayne, he beyng within his Realme. And if he be owte of his Realme, The signet shall suffice for to seal all suche actes and wrytynges, touchyng the said Order, that there may be concluded and made.

XXX. Item, it is agreed, that every Felow of the said Order from hensforth shall have the Statutes of the said Order, first collected and oversene by the Register, and after that sealed with the common Seal aforesaid. And if the Knyght will have any armes devysed, or cognysance made within the Boke of the said Statuts, then the said Boke shall be delyvered to the Kyng at Armes of th'Order, for trewly to ordayne of it as it shall appertayne. And the originall to be lykewyse signed and sealed, the whiche shall abyde in the Treasory of the said Collegē for evermore.

XXXI. Item, it is agreed, that after the death of eny of the Knyghtes of the said Company, his Executours shall be bounde for to sende agayne, and to delyver the Statutes of the said Order, within three monethes after, if so be that the Statutes hath been delivered

lyvered unto hym by the Soverayne, or to his charge. The which Statutes shall be delivered agayn to the Warden or Register of the said College, or to one of the principall Officers for the tyme beyng.

XXXII. Item, it is agreed, that none of the Knyghtes of Saynt George, of the said Companye of the Garter, shall not goo oute of the Contrey nor Dominion of the Soverayne, without havyng leave and lisence of the Soverayne: And therefore it is agreed, that if eny viage be made, or any other noble acte appertaynyng to the honor of Knyghthod, The said Soverayne, of his grace, for the great love, favor, and confidence that he beares towarde the Knyghtes of the said Order, will preferre, advance, and present the said Felowes and Knyghtes of th' Order of Saynt George before all other.

XXXIII. Item, that none of the Knyghtes of the said Order shall not arme themselves the one against the other, but in the Warres of his Soverayne Lorde, in his right and juste quarell, and if it shulde happen, that

any

any of the ſaid Order were retayned with any Lorde, and holdyng his partie and quarell, and th' adverſari partie deſireth alſoo to have another Felowe of the ſaid Order with hym: In this caſe, ſuche a Knyght and Felow ſhall not be retayned, but may excuſe hym from all ſuch thynges, bycauſe his Felowe is armed agaynſt hym on the other ſyde, and was retayned before hym, and every Knyght of the ſaid Order ſhall be bounde to excepte when he ſhall be retained, that he may be holely diſchargyd from his ſervyce of Warre, yf any of the Felowſhipp before hym retayned or holdyng the contrary and adverſari partye. And if he that is the ſecond retayned know that any of his Felowes be retayned before hym, and armed with his adverſari partye, Then he that is ſeconde retayned, at the fyrſte knowledge that he ſhall have thereof, ſhall be bounde to excuſe hym towarde his Maiſter, and leave that quarell.

XXXIV. Item, that all the lycencis gyven to the Knyghtes of the Order, that goo oute of the Realme for to ſeke and obtayne honor, and all certifications,

tions, or sendynge letters and writynges concernyng the said Order, from hensforth, shall be sealled with one of the Seales of the said Orde.

XXXV. Item, it is agreed, that if eny Knyght of the said Order, for his devocion, wyll dwell within the said Castell contynually, There shall be ordenyd for hym a dwellyng place convenient, by th' assignment of the Soverayne, and he of his propre goods and at his costes and chargies shall provyde for hys lyveyng.

XXXVI. Item, if any other Knyght, not beyng of the said Order, hathe any wyll to dwelle there for his devocion, there shall be ordened for hym a dwellyng place, after the wyll and pleasure of the said Soverayne, and with the consentement of the said Company.

XXXVII. Item, it is ordened, that yf any Knyght, or other parson, wylle gyve any Landes, heritage, or rentes, for to be participant of all the good orayssons and prayers that shall be said in the sayde place, also his name shall be registred, and the Canons and pore Knyghts shall pray perpetually unto God for hym, and also the said Deane, Warden, and Ca-

Canons of the said College from hensforth shall not take any maner of charge upon the said College, withoute the advyse and consentment of the sayd Soverayne, or his deputie, and the Felowship of the sayd Order, in presence, and by them concented and agreed in playne Chapter.

XXXVIII. Item, for to have better knowledge of the Knyghts that shall be of the said Order, the Soverayne of it willyth and ordeneth by the Willes and consentment of all the hole Company, that from hensforth, that every Knyght of the said Order shall have and were apertly and openly a Coller of golde about his necke, waying thyrty ounces of Troy weyght and not above, the whiche Coller shall be made by pieces in fashion of Garters, in the myddes of which Garters shall be a double Rose, the one Rose of Red, and the other within White, and the other Rose White, and the other Rose within rede, and at the ende of the said Coller shall be put fasten'd the Ymage of Saynt George. The whiche Coller the said Soverayn, his Successours, and amiable Companye of the said Order

ſhall be bounde to were, and in eſpecyall, in principall and ſolempne Feaſtes of the yere, and in other dayes of the yere ſhall be holden to were a ſmall Chayne of Gold with the Ymage of Saynt George dependyng at the ende of the ſaid Chayne, excepte in tyme of Warre, ſickenes, longe viage; Then it ſhall ſuffice hym to were alonely a laſe of ſylke with the ſaid Image of Saynt George. And if the ſaid Collier have any need of reparacion, it may be put in the handes of the Goldeſmyth and workeman unto the tyme that it be repared, the whiche Collier alſo may not be made more richer with ſtones or other thynges, reſervyng the ſaid Ymage: The which may be garniſhed and enryched at the pleaſure of the ſaide Knyghte: Alſo the ſaid Collier may not be ſolde, engaged, aliened, nor gyven, for any neede, cauſe, or neceſſity whatſoever it be.

These *Statutes* to this Day have no very great or material Alterations made in them, tho' often deſign'd by the ſucceeding Princes; and Commiſſions frequently iſſu'd out for that Purpoſe.

As

As to the Annals of this Noble *Order*, there are ſeveral Books, wherein they are recorded, diſtinguiſh'd by ſeveral Names, as the *Regiſtrum Ordinis Chartaceum*, the *Liber Niger*, *Liber Cæruleus*, *Liber Rubeus*, and *Liber Carolinus*.

THE firſt is an old *Paper Book*, written in *French*, begun in all Probability, by *John Coringham*, who, in *A. D.* 1414, was *Canon* of *Windſor*, and *Regiſter* of the *Order*, and ends in the 31ſt of *Hen.* VIII.

THE *Liber Niger* is in *Latin*, which appears to be compil'd by Dr. *Aldrydge*, while he was *Regiſter*; the Tranſcription was finiſh'd with one Hand, 31. *Hen.* VIII. differs but little from the former Book, call'd *Regiſtrum Chartaceum*; but is carried on with another Hand to the end of 5. *Ed.* VI.

THE *Liber Cæruleus*, ſo call'd, from the Cover likewiſe, being fairly bound in *Blue Velvet*, begins with the 1ſt of Queen *Mary*, and ends at the 18th of King *James*.

THE *Liber Rubeus*, as being bound up in *Red Velvet*, begins where the

Blue Book ends, and contains like Acts and Entries with the former: It ends in the 14th of King *Charles* I. having first given a full Account of the Ceremonies perform'd at the Installation of King *Charles* II. and as to a great Part of this *Book*, it may justly and without Flattery be said (and to the honourable Memory of that Right Reverend Prelate Doctor *Wren*, late Lord Bishop of *Ely*, 'tis mention'd) that, from the Institution of this most Noble *Order*, until He was chosen into the Office of *Register*, the *Annals* of the *Order* were at no time recorded by a Pen neer so judicious or elegant; whose excellent Pattern his worthy Brother and Successor into that Office, Dr. *Christopher Wren*, has exactly copied in the following Leaves.

The other Book, call'd *Liber Carolinus*, begins *A. D.* 1640, wherein the *Annals* are carried on to the Beginning of the Year 1670, by Dr. *Brune Ryves*, and since continued by his Successors, the Learned, Worthy, and Honourable Deans of *Windsor*. And in a Chapter held at *Windsor*, * *April* 16. 13 *Charles* II. it was decreed,

* *Lib.* Carolin. *p.* 30.

creed, that there ſhould be two of theſe Books made, the one pen'd in *Latin*, to remain with the *Regiſter* at *Windſor*, and the other in *Engliſh*, to be kept at *Whitehall*, and called *Regiſtrum Aulicum*.

I ſhall now proceed, in conſidering the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of this Noble *Order*; and they are theſe, *viz.* the *Garter*, *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, *George*, and *Collar*. The four firſt were aſſigned by the Founder, and the two laſt by King *Henry* VIII.

And firſt; the Royal *Garter* juſtly challenges the Preheminence, as being that, from which the *Order* itſelf receiv'd a Name and Title. It is the firſt Part of the *Habit* preſented to forreign *Princes* and abſent Knights, and that wherewith they and all other *Elect Knights* are firſt adorned; and of ſo great Honour and Grandeur in this Inſtitution, that by the bare Inveſtiture with this noble *Enſign*, the *Knights* are reckon'd and accounted *Companions* and *Fellows* of the greateſt *Military Order* in the World.

Of what Materials this principal *Enſign* was at firſt made, does not ſo

plainly appear; nor is it deſcrib'd by any, before *Polydore Virgil*, and he, but in general, as to the Ornamental Part of it, *viz.* that it was adorn'd with Gold and Precious Stones, and had a Buckle of Gold at the End, wherewith to faſten it about the Leg. In theſe later Ages this *Enſign* has been diſtinguiſh'd in a very particular Manner; *that* ſent to *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, exceeded all others, beſtow'd by former *Sovereigns*, for Richneſs and Glory; each Letter of the *Motto* being compos'd of Diamonds, in Number (411) according to an Inventory given in, by the *Sovereign*'s Command, to the Dean and Chapter of *Windſor*.

THIS *Enſign*, the *Garter*, was at the Foundation of the *Order*, appointed to be worn on the *Left* Leg, a little beneath the Knee, and ſo has the Uſage in all Time ſince continued. But the Uſe of this *Enſign* is extended alſo to ſome other Particulars, as well as being Ornamental to the *Left* Leg; namely it was (and that anciently alſo) made uſe of to incircle the *Scutcheon* of St. GEORGE's *Arms*, worn by the *Sove-*

Sovereign and *Knights Companions*, on the *Left* Shoulder of their *Mantles*; who, within a ſhort Time after, took it to ſurround each of their proper *Coats* of *Arms*; which Uſage their Succeſſors, in this moſt Noble *Order*, have retained, as a peculiar Privilege; but not permitted to any other, except the *Prelate* of the *Garter*, their principal Officer.

KING *Henry* VIII. was firſt of the *Sovereigns*, who introduced into his *Great Seal* the *Scutcheon* of his *Arms* incircled within a Garter; as may be ſeen † placed on either Side of his Portraiture, ſitting in his Royal Throne. Since his Reign, all ſucceeding *Sovereigns* have borne their *Arms* within the *Garter*, not only in their *Great* and *Privy Seals*, but alſo in thoſe other belonging to their Courts of Juſtice; and generally in all Things (except *Coins*) whereon the Scutcheon of their *Arms* have been ſince cut, carved, graved, painted, or wrought; in Imitation of whom, the *Knights Companions* have done the like: However, as to *Coins*, there were *an.* 21 *Car.* I. certain Half-Crowns ſtamped

† Speed's *Chron.*

ped in the Weſt of *England*, having the *Sovereign*'s *Arms* ſo encompaſs'd; and this was the firſt Money, whereon the Royal *Garter* appear'd amongſt us. And his late Majeſty, King *Charles* II. intending the Augmentation of the Honor of this renowned *Order*, as in many other Things, ſo in advancing the Reputation of this Noble *Enſign* by a more publick Way, did cauſe the *Irradiated Croſs* of St. *George*, encompaſs'd about with the Royal *Garter*, to be ſtamped in the Centre of his *Silver Coin*, made upon the Alteration of it, *an.* 14 *Car.* II.

We have ſeen *Gold Rings* caſt into the Figure of *Garters*; the Ground on the outſide enamelled with a deep Blue, through which the Golden Letters of the *Motto* appearing, ſet them off with an admirable Beauty. And it ſeems, ſuch *Garter-Rings* have been of ancient Uſe: For the Preface to the *Black Book* of the *Order*, takes notice not only of wearing the *Garter* on the Left *Leg* and *Shoulder*, but adds alſo the Thumb‖; by which we ſuppoſe is meant *Gold Rings*, made into the Faſhion of *Garters*, and beſtowed

‖ *Interdum pollice geſtare. p.* 15.

ſtowed by ſome new inſtalled *Knights* upon their Relations and Friends, to wear in Memorial of ſo great an Honour conferred upon them.

AMONG the *Officers* belonging to the *Order*, the *Prelate* (as was obſerv'd before) is allow'd to bear his proper *Arms* (impal'd with thoſe of his See) within the *Garter*; and the reſt of the *Officers* are permitted *only* to wear the *Badges* of their *Office*, ſurrounded with the ſame, to expreſs their peculiar Relation to this moſt noble *Order*.

THE next *Habit* or *Enſign* is the *Mantle*, which, no doubt, was tranſferred and derived to us from the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, ſince *it* ſo little differs in Faſhion from their *Pallium* or *Toga*.* In ſome of the Statutes of the *Order*, 'tis call'd *Trabea*, which *Roſinus* alſo reckons among the different Kinds of *Mantles* or *Gowns*; ſometimes 'tis call'd *Chlamyda*, ſometimes *Stola*, but in other Places (and more agreeable to the *Greek* and *Latin* Denomination) *Pallium* and *Toga*.

* *V.* Panciroll. *Lib.* 1. *rerum memor. deperd.* & Car. Sigon. *de judiciis. L.* 3.

IN the *Founder*'s Statutes, Mention is made of no other Robe among thoſe appointed for the Habit of this moſt noble

noble *Order*, but only this *upper Garment* or *Mantle*; which, in the *Sovereign*, is diſtinguiſh'd from the *Knights-Companions*, only by a long Train. That which was made for the *Founder* againſt the firſt Feaſt of this *Order*, appears to have been of fine *Woollen Cloth*. And 'tis not unlikely, the Founder made choice of Cloth for the *Robes* of the *Order* (rather than any richer Material) to the end He might give a Reputation to that our home-bred and native Commodity; notwithſtanding Leave was given for the Proxies of *Foreign Princes* to bring over with them *Mantles* of *Silk* or *Velvet*, when they came to receive the Poſſeſſion of their Principals Stalls.

THE firſt time we diſcover the *Sovereign's Mantles* to be made of *Velvet*, is about the Beginning of the Reign of *Henry* VI. when *thoſe* of *Foreign Princes* likewiſe were made here of *Velvet*.

AS touching the *Mantles* of the *Knights-Companions*, there is no queſtion, but they were of the ſame *Materials* with thoſe made for the *Sovereign*, and had the ſame Changes or Alte-

Alterations; tho' this be not ſo eaſy to diſcover, becauſe the *Mantle* was provided at the proper Charge of the Knights Companions themſelves, and therefore not upon any publick Record.

THE *Colour* of theſe *Mantles* is appointed by the Statutes to be *blue*; and of this coloured Cloth, was the firſt Robe made for the *Founder*; by which, as by the Ground-work of the Royal *Garter* it is not unlike, he alluded (in this no leſs than that) to the *Colour* of the *Field* in the *French* Arms, which a few Years before he had aſſumed in *Quarter*, with thoſe of his Kingdom of *England* ---- But the Colour of the *Surcoat* was changed every Year, as will appear by and by. Indeed, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign (upon what Ground is no-where mention'd) the Colour of Foreign Princes *Mantles* was changed from *Blue* to *Purple*, and ſo continued till about the 12th Year of King *Charles* I. when that *Sovereign*, having determined to reſtore the Colour of the *Mantle* to the Primitive Inſtitution, *viz.* a *rich celeſtial Blue*, gave Directions to Mr. *Peter Richaut* Merchant (afterwards Knighted

Knighted by Him) to furniſh himſelf with a parcel of Velvets of that Colour from *Genoa*, and upon their Arrival into *England*, commanded Sir *Thomas Rowe*, then Chancellor of the *Order*, forthwith to ſignify by Letters to all the *Knights-Companions* his *Sovereign* Pleaſure, that every one of them ſhou'd take ſo much of that *Velvet* as wou'd make new Robes againſt the following St. *George*'s Day, and ſatisfy for them: And accordingly all the *Knights* furniſhed themſelves with new *Mantles* at the rate of 1 *l.* 17 *s.* a Yard, being the Price the *Sovereign* paid to Mr. *Richaut*; And the firſt time theſe *Mantles* were worn, was to honour the Inſtallation of King *Charles* II.

Altho' the juſt Number of Ells of Cloth, which went to the making the *Founders* firſt *Mantle*, are not ſet down; yet in Groſs for his *Mantle*, *Hood* and *Surcoat*, there was allow'd 10 Ells of Long Cloth. The full Length of King *Charles* II's. *Mantle*, from the Collar behind to the End of the Train, was three Yards.

The

THE Left Shoulder of theſe *Mantles* have, from the Inſtitution of the *Order*, been adorn'd with one *large* fair *Garter*, as has been obſerv'd, containing the Motto, *Honi ſoit Qui Mal y penſe.* Within this *Garter* was embroider'd the Arms of St. *George*, viz. *Argent*, a *Croſs Gules*; and was heretofore wrought upon Sattin, with Gold, Silver and Silk; but in ſucceeding Times, more Coſt was beſtow'd upon this *Enſign*; the Embroidery being curiouſly wrought upon Velvet, with Damask, Gold, and ſundry Sorts of Purls, Plates, *Venice* Twiſts and Silks, and the Letters of the *Motto* and Borders of the *Garter*, compoſed of fair Oriental Pearl.

ABOUT the Time of K. *Henry* VI. the *Lining* of this *Robe* was *white Damask*, and afterwards *white Sattin*; but of later Times it was lined with *white Taffaty*, which continues yet in Faſhion. For farther Ornament, the *Mantle* had fixed to its Collar a Pair of long Strings, anciently woven of *blue Silk* only, called *Cordans*, *Robe-Strings* or *Laces*; but of later Times twiſted round, and made of *Venice* Gold

Gold, and Silk of the Colour of the Robe; at each End of which hung a great Knob or Button wrought over and raiſed with a rich Caul of Gold, and Taſſels thereunto of like Silk and Gold; and at the Collar was uſually fixed an Hook and Eye of Gold, for the ſurer faſtning it about the Shoulders.

THE next *Habit* or *Enſign* is the *Surcoat* or *Kirtle*, which, tho' it be not taken notice of in the *Founder*'s Statutes, is as ancient as the *Mantle*, being made uſe of at the Inſtitution of the *Order*, and equally deriv'd from the *Greeks* and *Romans*; being not much unlike the *Tunick* or *Upper Coat*, now in Faſhion with us, and worn over the *Veſt*. Theſe *Surcoats* were heretofore annually beſtowed by the *Sovereign* on the *Knights-Companions*, and therefore call'd his * *Livery*. They were at firſt made of *Woollen Cloth*, as the *Mantles* are obſerv'd to have been, and did ſo continue, after the *Mantle* was changed to *Velvet*, for ſome time, at leaſt till after the Office of *Chancellor* of the *Garter* was erected by King *Edward* IV. as appears by the *Precedent*

* Spelm. *Gloſſ. in V.* Liberatio.

dent of this *Livery* in the *Sovereign*'s great Wardrobe. At length theſe *Surcoats* came to be made of *Velvet* too, which Sort of Silk is ſtill retained.

THE Colour of this Veſture was anciently changed every Year, commonly into one of theſe four Colours, either *Blue*, *Scarlet*, *Sanguine* in Grain, or *White*; but always changed to the ſame Colour with the Sovereign's.

THE *Founder's* firſt *Surcoat* was of the ſame Cloth and Colour with his *Mantle*, viz. *Blue*; but that *Surcoat* provided for Him in the 34th Year of his Reign, was Black * Cloth. Of the ſame Colour were *thoſe* He beſtowed on the *Knights-Companions* the ſame Year. And the Reaſon, we conceive, of this *Mourning Colour* being aſſumed, was, becauſe the Peſtilence † began again to encreaſe; the dreadful Remembrance of that great Peſtilence, which ſo furiouſly raged 11 Years before (called *Peſtilentia Magna*) inviting to all kind of Humiliation.

* *Ex Rot. Fo. Newbury M.* 13.

† *Peſtilentia minor.*

IN the Reign of *Edward* IV. we find the four Colours above-mention'd were laid aſide, and others brought into

into Uſe, as *Purple Velvet*; and towards the latter End of the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. 'tis manifeſt from the Warrants enter'd in the *Great Wardrobe*, that the *Surcoats* both of the *Sovereign* and *Knights Companions* were *Crimſon Velvet*: Nor was this Colour alter'd in the *Surcoat*, tho' King *Charles* I. reſtored the *Mantle* to its firſt and ancient Colour.

THE ornamental *Trimmings* of theſe *Garments* at the Time of inſtituting the *Order*, and a long Time after, deſerve our Notice; being garniſhed or powdered all over with little *Garters*, embroider'd with Silk and Gold Plate; in each of which was neatly wrought the Motto, *Honi ſoit qui mal y penſe*. Beſides, the Buckles and Pendants to theſe ſmall *Garters* were Silver gilt: Of theſe embroidered *Garters*, there were laid upon the firſt *Surcoat* and *Hood* made for the *Founder*, no leſs than 168; and in the Reign of King *Henry* V. the Number of theſe *Garters* appears to be ſettled, according to the Degrees of Honour of each Knight Companion. But this Manner

ner of adorning grew at length quite out of Faſhion.

THESE *Surcoats*, whilſt made of Cloth, were lined with *Fur*; the *Sovereign*'s purfled with *Ermin*. But in time theſe *Furs* alſo were laid aſide, and then the *Surcoats* came to be lined with white *Sarcenet*, to which, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, white *Taffaty* ſucceeded, and that ſtill continues.

AS the *Knights-Companions* had *Surcoats* every Year, ſo upon the *Eve* of the Feaſt of St. *George* they parted with them, not wearing 'em after; the *Enſigns* and *Ornaments* of this kind being afterwards diſpos'd of (as appears from the *Black Book* * of the *Order*) to the Uſe of the College. * *P.* 313.

WE will next ſay ſomething of the *Hood* and *Cap*; The *former*, in King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, and the *Black Book* of the *Order*, is called Humerate, but in the *Rolls* of the *Great Wardrobe*, Capucium. In the *French* it is *Chaperon*, a Word uſed in the Statute; || and alſo retain'd in the old *Engliſh* Draught of *Henry* VIII's *Statutes* of the *Order*. *Hoods* were anciently worn for De- || 1 *Rich.* 2. *C.* 7.

fence of the Head, againſt the Inconveniencies of Weather, *&c.* but in later Times *Caps* and *Hats* have ſupplied their Place. This *Hood* was ordained, and is yet retained as Part of the *Habit* of this moſt Noble *Order*, being of equal Antiquity, tho' not remembred in the Statutes, with the reſt of the *Habit*. 'Tis now generally made, as heretofore, of the ſame Materials with the *Surcoat*, and conſequently of the ſame Colour. 'Twas anciently trim'd and garniſhed, with a Proportion of little embroider'd *Garters*, lin'd with Cloth of a different Colour, and ſuch as would beſt ſet off to View; but now with *Taffaty*, as is the Lining of the *Surcoat*.

As to the *Cap*, which in Uſe and Place ſucceeded the *Hood*, it has been and yet is made of *Black Velvet*, lin'd with *Taffaty*, but the Faſhion has ſeveral Times varied. In the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. the *Cap* was flat: In Queen *Elizabeth*'s Time, a little raiſed in the Head; and in K. *James* I. much more high-crown'd.

THIS *Cap* has been uſually adorned with Plumes of white Feathers, and Sprigs,

Sprigs, and bound about with a Band, ſet thick with Diamonds; and ſometimes the Brims have been tack'd up with a large and coſtly Jewel.

IT may not be amiſs here, to take notice of the *Croſs* of the *Order*, encompaſſed with a *Garter*, which by King *Charles* I. was ordained * to be worn upon the Left Side of the *Sovereign*'s and *Knights-Companions* Cloaks, Coats and Caſſocks, when they did not wear their Robes. And it was not long after, e're the *Glory* or *Star* (as 'tis uſually call'd) having certain Beams of Silver that ſpread in Form of a Croſs, was introduced and added thereunto. King *Edward* IV. encompaſſed his *White Roſe* with the like *Glory*; of which both the Stone and Wood-Work of St. *George*'s Chappel at *Windſor* afford ſeveral Inſtances. And that Prince aſſum'd ſuch *Device*, upon the *Sun*'s Appearance like three *Suns*, which ſuddenly united together into one, immediately before his fortunate Victory at the Battle of *Mortimer*'s *Croſs*: An Occaſion which He thought himſelf much obliged to perpetuate. And as to this new Ornament of the

* *Lib. R.* P. 29.

Star, they much miſtake, who take it to be the *Garter* that is thus irradiated; there being ſomething elſe in it, which was then thought more worthy of the *Glory*; and from *it*, not the *Garter* do the Beams and Rays ſpread, *viz.* the *Croſs* of the *Order*, eſteemed glorious, ſince it ſhined ſo in Heaven, at its Appearance to *Conſtantine* the Great. And in 1629 a *Medal* was ſtamped in Memorial of adding this honourable *Device*; the *Reverſe* of which *Medal* is plac'd in the Title Page of this Book.

SOON after the Inſtitution of this noble *Order*, a Cuſtom was taken up, of honouring the *Queen*, ſome of the *Knights-Companions Wives*, and other great *Ladies*, with *Robes* and *Hoods*, of the Gift of the *Sovereign*, and of the ſame Materials, as were the *Sovereign*'s and *Knight-Companions Surcoats*, garniſh'd alſo with little embroider'd *Garters*, and lined with rich *Furs*; which Robes they likewiſe wore during the Solemnity of the Feaſt of St. *George*.

THE firſt Mention of this, which hath occurr'd to us, is *An.* 7. *R.* II. (tho' we conceive 'tis elder) where againſt

againſt the Feaſt of St. *George* that Year, ſuch kind of *Robes* and *Hoods* were provided for the *Queen*, &c. Theſe *Robes* were made of *Cloth Violet* in Grain, like as the *Sovereign* and *Knights Companions Surcoats* that Year; they were lined with *Fur*, but the *Hoods* with *Scarlet*, and both embroider'd over with little *Garters*; and the Proportion of Cloth, Furs and Garters, were allowed according to their ſeveral Degrees. The laſt mention we find of theſe *Liveries* was *An.* 16 of *Edward* IV. when, at *Windſor* on the Feaſt of St. *George*, the *Queen*, &c. had *Murrey Gowns* embroider'd with *Garters*.

Besides theſe *Robes* worn by the Ladies, at the Feſtivals of the *Order*, there ſeems to be ſome Intimation of wearing a *Garter* alſo on their Left Arms: For 'tis obſerv'd to our Hand, from the Counteſs of * *Tankervil's* Monument, that ſhe is portrayed with ſuch a *Garter* on her Left Arm.

* *In præf. Lib. vocat. Cotonſ.* 92.

After a long Diſuſe of theſe Robes, 'twas mov'd in Chapter (14 *Car.* I.) that they might be reſtor'd, and in particular, that the Ladies of

the *Knights-Companions* might enjoy the ancient Privilege of wearing a *Garter* of the *Order* about their Arms; upon which Motion, another Chapter was appointed to conſider more of the Matter: But what was then or after done, does not appear; and the unhappy War coming on, this Matter wholly ſlept.

PROCEED we next to ſpeak of the *Collar*, another *Enſign* of this Noble *Order*.---- And this is an Ornament not of late but ancient Invention; † *Gen.* 41. taken notice of even by *Moſes*, † among the Ornaments that *Pharaoh* beſtow'd on *Joſeph*, ſaid likewiſe to be of *Gold*; that being the Metal, whereof it was in all times ordinarily made. And it may be inferr'd, the Uſe of it in that was the ſame as in this Age, *viz.* to be worn about the Neck, in regard *Pharaoh* put it about *Joſeph*'s Neck. Prophane Writers likewiſe are very full to this Purpoſe, which need not here be quoted: I only obſerve, that in eldeſt Times, none but *Kings* and Princes wore *Collars*; and therefore their firſt Uſe ſeems to be a Note of Dignity and Power; as is evident out

out of *Daniel*, where is noted, that the *Aſſyrian* Kings uſed this Ornament. Afterwards Men famous for Wiſdom, excelling in Counſels, and thereby beneficial to their Country, had *Collars* beſtowed on them, for Tokens of Reward: But the *Collar* was beſtowed as a Reward alſo upon thoſe, whoſe famous Actions and military Enterprizes merited well, and render'd them deſerving of eminent Recompences, tho' otherwiſe Perſons of no great or extraordinary Note. And thus, among the *Dona & præmia militaria*, thoſe ſolemn Rewards, with which the *Romans* honoured *Vertue*, we find *Collars* to be of the Number: And the ſame Cuſtom was continued down to, and uſed by the later Emperors, as the learned *Budæus* obſerves.

Now, as conformable hereunto, there was inſtituted a *Collar*, as one of the Ornaments of this moſt Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, compos'd after a peculiar Manner, exactly relative to the Name and Title of the *Order*; to the wearing of which, the *Sovereign* obliged both himſelf and *Knights-Companions*, and His and their Suc-

ceſſors. This *Collar* was ordained to be * *Gold*, 30 Ounces *Troy* Weight; tho' ſometimes it has weighed more. By the ſame Statutes it was appointed, that this *Collar* ſhou'd be compoſed of † Pieces of *Gold*, † in Faſhion of *Garters*, the Ground enamelled *Blue*, and the Letters of the *Motto Gold*. In the midſt of each *Garter*, two Roſes plac'd, the innermoſt enamelled *Red*, and the outermoſt *White*; contrarily in the next *Garter*, the innermoſt Roſe enamell'd *White*, and the outermoſt *Red*; and ſo alternately continued. But of later Times theſe *Roſes* are wholly *Red*. The Number of theſe *Garters* are ſo many, as be the ordained Number of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, by the Inſtitution of the *Order*, viz. 26; being tied together with as many Knots of Gold; and this Faſhion has in all Particulars hitherto continued invariable. At the Middle of the *Collar* before, is to be faſtned the Image of St. *George* armed, ſitting on Horſe-back, who having thrown the Dragon upon his Back, encounters him with a tilting Spear: This Jewel is not ſurrounded with a *Garter*, or Row of

* *Stat. Hen.* 8. *Art* 38.

† *Art. ib.*

of Diamonds, as is the *Leſſer George*. It is allowed to be garniſhed with Diamonds, and other Enrichments, at the Pleaſure of the *Knight-Companion* who owns it.

THERE are now in Uſe with us other Sorts of *Collars*, worn as Badges of lower and inferiour Honors vulgarly called *Collars* of SS; which it may not be amiſs here to take notice of. Some of them are adorned with Part of the *Collar* of the *Garter*. According to ſome Accounts, * the S S refer to *Saint Simplicius*, under whoſe Name there was a *Society* form'd, conſiſting of Perſons noble in their own Families. He himſelf being a Senator, and ſuffering Martyrdom under *Diocletian*.

* *V. Aſhm. p.* 224.

HOW long ſince the *Collar* of S S came into Uſe here in *England*, we no where find: But if Credit may be given to a Monument, in the Collegiate Church at *Warwick*, it will appear to have been about 400 Years ſince, and worn as an Ornament for *Women* as well as *Men*.

IN the ancient Creation of an *Eſquire* in *England*, Part of the Ceremonies

ny was, that the King put about his Neck a Silver * *Collar* of S S, as an *Enſign* of that Dignity: And our learned *Selden* contemns not the Authority of that old Ballad, The Tanner of Tamworth, to prove † the Making of *Eſquires* in King *Edward* IV's Reign, by beſtowing ſuch *Collars*.

* Camd. *Brit.*

† Titles *of Hon. p.* 836.

THE *Golden Collar*, however, appears undeniably, from a great many Inſtances in ſeveral Reigns, to have been the undoubted Badge of a *Knight*; and tho' now 'tis grown out of Faſhion, yet in *Henry* VIII's Time, there was a *Proviſo*, enter'd || in an Act of Parliament (made for Reformation of Apparel) that *Knights* might publickly wear a *Gold Collar* of S S.

|| 24. Hen. 8. *Cap.* 13.

THE *Collars* of S S, now in Uſe are thus diſtinguiſh'd in Figure and Faſhion.

THE *Lord Mayor* of *London*'s *Collar* is Gold, having a Knot (like one of thoſe which tye the Garters together in the great *Collar* of the *Order*) inſerted between the two S S; and they again placed between two *Roſes*, *viz.* a white Roſe within a Red; and in the middle, before the Breaſt, is a large *Portcullis*, whereat hangs a moſt rich

rich Jewel, ſet with fair and large Diamonds.

THE *Collars* of the *Lords Chief Juſtices* of both the *Benches*, and the *Chief Baron* of the *Exchequer*, are, in Memory * of the abovementioned Saint *Simplicius*, (a Senator and conſequently a Gownman,) formed of the Letter S, and a Knot alternately; having a *Roſe* ſet in that Part of it, which falls out to be in the middle of their Breaſts, and another on their Backs: The five Flowers of theſe *Roſes*, are made of five large *Pearls*. * Camb. *Rem.*

THOSE *Collars* which appertain to the *Kings* and *Heralds* of *Arms*, ſo likewiſe to the *Serjeants* at *Arms*, to be worn on all Days of ſolemn Attendance, are alſo compos'd of S S, linked together; in the middle of the Breaſt is a *Roſe*, and another in the middle of the Back, at each of which hang three ſmall Drops of Silver. But the S S in the *Collars*, worn by the *Kings* of *Arms*, are made ſomewhat bigger than the other; and in that Part lying on either Shoulder, is a *Portcullis* taken in between the S S which are wanting in the reſt.

THE

THE general Difference between the *Collars*, appropriate to the Degrees before named, is this: All ſuch Perſons as are honour'd with *Knighthood*, have allow'd them *Collars* of *Silver Gilt*, but to *Eſquires*, thoſe of *Silver* only: And therefore he that is created an *Herald*, is alſo in Part of that Ceremony made an *Eſquire*, by putting on a *Collar* of S S of *Silver* about his Neck; and ſo is a *Serjeant at Arms*.

THE Kings of *England* have ſometimes heretofore drawn a *Collar* of S S about their *Arms*, in like Manner with the *Garter*, as we have obſerved already--But, not to digreſs any farther, we proceed now in ſpeaking to another *Enſign* of this Noble *Order*, *viz.* the *Leſſer George*; ſo call'd in Reſpect of that other *George* we have mention'd already, as faſten'd to the middle of the *Collar* before, and called the *Great George*.

NOW, this *Leſſer George* does not appear to have been worn before the Breaſt, or under the Right Arm, as now uſed, until the 13 of King *Henry* VIII. when

when a Decree was paſt † to this Effect, *That every Knight of the* Order, *ſhould wear looſely before his Breaſt, the* Image *of St.* George, *in a Gold Chain, or otherwiſe in a Ribband; the ſame to be thenceforward placed within the Ennobl'd* Garter; *to the end a manifeſt Diſtinction ſhould thereby appear, between the* Knights-Companions, *and others of the Nobility and Knights*, who, according to the Faſhion of thoſe Times, wore large Gold Chains, the ordinary Enſign of their *Knighthood.*

† *Lib. Nig. p.* 212.

This *George* was for the moſt part made of pure Gold, curiouſly wrought by the Hand of the *Goldſmith*; but divers of them are exquiſitely cut in *Onix*'s, as alſo in *Agats.* This *Leſſer George* by degrees came to be worn in *Silk Ribbands* as well as *Gold Chains*, each at Pleaſure. The Colour of theſe *Ribbands*, at their firſt Uſe, was *Black*, afterwards *Blue*, which, 'tis thought, began in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, and grew into ſo great Eſteem, that towards the later End of King *James* I's Reign, it was decreed, † *that for the future, it ſhould always be of a*

† *V. Aſhm. p.* 227.

Blue

Blue Colour *and no other: Nor in Time of Mourning for any of the* Knights Companions, *of what Degree ſoever, ſhould the Colour be changed.* The ordinary Manner of Wearing this *Ribband*, in time of Peace, was, till of late, about the Neck, down to the middle of the Breaſt, where the *Leſſer George* hung; but now for the more Conveniency of Riding or Action, the ſame is ſpread over the *Left* Shoulder, and brought under the *Right* Arm, where the Jewel hangs.

THERE are ſeveral ſolemn Days and Occaſions, on which the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* are enjoyn'd to wear, either the *Whole Habit* of the *Order*, or ſome Part of it. The more ſolemn, and which require a full Conformity, as to Wearing the *Whole Habit*, *viz.* the *Garter*, *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, *Collar*, *Great George*, and *Cap*, are firſt, the High Feſtival of the *Order* (commonly called Saint GEORGE's *Feaſt*) whether it be ſolemniz'd on the 22d, 23d, or 24th Days of *April* annually, or any other Days within the following Year by Prorogation. In like manner, at the *Feaſts*

of

of Inſtallation, ſuch *Knights-Companions*, as are appointed by the *Sovereign* to aſſiſt, are to wear the *Whole Habit*. But of this, and many other Particulars, relating to the Time when the *Whole Habit* ought to be worn, the Reader may ſatisfie himſelf, in conſulting the *Bodies* and *Exemplars* of the Statutes of the *Order*: The leſs ſolemn Occaſions are thoſe which require wearing the *Mantle* or *Collar* of the *Order* only. Such is the Morrow after the Grand Feaſt-Day, when the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* proceed to the Chapel, and make their Offering of Gold and Silver; for then it ſuffices, that they put on the *Mantle* only: And, Service being ended, they were wont to leave the *Mantle* at the Chapter-Houſe Door, as they went out of the Chappel. The ſame *Mantle* likewiſe to be worn at all *Chapters* held; alſo as often as 'tis requiſite for the *Sovereign* or any of the *Knights Companions* to enter into the Chappel of St. GEORGE at *Windſor*; it having been ordain'd * for that Purpoſe, that every one of the *Knights Companions* ſhould leave a Mantle at *Windſor*;

* *V. Aſhm.* p. 232.

Windſor; and, in Purſuance of this Article, it appears * that anciently both the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* left *Mantles* in the *Veſtry* at *Windſor*, for ſuch accidental Occaſions. And heretofore, in the general *Bill*, drawn up of Things neceſſary to to be prepared for Inſtallation of a *Knight Companion*, there were uſually † two *Mantles* ſet down, the Uſe of the *one* being therein expreſly mention'd, to remain in the College at *Windſor*, and the *other* for all other Occaſions elſewhere. Theſe *Mantles*, after the Death of the Owners, fell to the Dean and Canons of *Windſor*, being then reſerved, either for publick Uſe of the *Knights-Companions*, when they caſually came to *Windſor*, or elſe ſold, ſometimes to the Heirs of the Deceaſed, or other *Knights-Companions*, who ſucceeded in the *Order*; as appears from the Accounts † of the Chanter of the *College*, in the Reigns of King *Henry* IV. *Henry* V. *Henry* VIII. Queen *Elizabeth*, and King *James*; who in all Times anſwered the full Benefit thereof to the *College*; as being a certain and unqueſtionable Due to

* *Ib.*

† *Ib.*

† *Ex Collect. G. Evans. Canon. ib.*

to the Dean and Canons; and this they have accordingly had and enjoyed: But of late, it ſeems, this Article has not been ſo punctually obſerved; and a Redreſs is hop'd for, under the preſent *Sovereign*. We are inform'd, moreover, * that by a Statute relating to this Noble Order, made in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, *the* **Knights Companions** *were bound by Oath, to take care by their Wills, that after their Deceaſe, all the* **Ornaments**, *which they had received, ſhould be reſtored; the* **Robes** *to the* **College**, *and the* **Jewels** *to the* **Sovereign** *that gave them.*

* *Ex Autogr. per Sacrament. D. Chriſt. Wren attestat. 12. Mar.* 1651.

As to the Times of Wearing the *Collar* of the *Order*, with the *Great George* thereunto appendant, 'tis ſometimes to be worn, when not any of the reſt of the *Habit* (ſaving the *Garter*) is appointed, as in ſpecial, at the *Principal and ſolemn Feaſts of the Year*, and other Feaſt-Days, to which a particular Order in Chapter (*ann.* 4 *Elizabeth*) thus directs, *viz.*

The Holy-Days and Sundays, within the Twelve Days.
St. Matthias Day.
Holy-Days in Eaſter Week.
St. Mark's Day.
St Philip and Jacob's Day.
Holy-Days in Whitſon Week.
St. Peter.
St. James.
St. Bartholomew.
St. Matthew.
St. Luke.
St. Simon and Jude.
St. Andrew, and
St. Thomas.

Beſides theſe, the *Sovereigns* and *Knights-Companions* have been accuſtomed to wear this *Noble Enſign*, upon the *Anniverſary* of the *Sovereign's Coronation*, and of *Gunpowder Treaſon*; and they did likewiſe wear it upon the late King *Charles* II's *Birth-Day*. And as to that other principal *Enſign*, the *Garter*; it ought daily to be worn, as the *Statutes* do ſtrictly enjoyn, with Penalties annex'd: But King *Henry* V. admitted of a Qualification,

cation, and in Caſe of Riding with Boots, ordained, that it might ſuffice, if the *Knight-Companion* wore ſome *Ribband*, or *Silk Lace*, to repreſent the *Garter*, with this Proviſo, *that no* Knight Companion *ſhould enter into Chapter, without his* Garter *Buckled about the Leg.*

THUS much concerning the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of this Noble *Order.*

THE next Thing we propoſe ſpeaking to, are the *Officers* appointed for the Service of that *Order.* Thoſe conſtituted by the *Founder* were *Three, viz.* a *Prelate*, *Regiſter*, and *Uſher*, to whom he aſſign'd ſeveral and particular Duties: Some of his Succeſſors added the *Chancellor* and *Garter* upon the ſame Account, and all of them ſworn to be of the Council of the *Order.* As to the Nature of their Offices, ſo far as they relate to the Duties enjoyned them within the *Order*, they are in general ſet down in that ancient Eſtabliſhment, recorded in the *Black Book*, * entituled, *Conſtitutiones ad Officiales Ordinis* [*Garterii*] *peculiariter attinentes, &c.* But more particularly their Duties are to be met with in ſeveral

* P. 232.

Places of the enſuing Diſcourſe, where they properly fall in to be treated of. At preſent, I obſerve, that the *Prelate* is the firſt and principal Officer belonging to the *Order*; His Office as ancient as the Inſtitution of the *Order*; * the *then* Biſhop of *Wincheſter* [*William de Edyngton*] being the firſt *Prelate*. He is an Officer of Honour only, and has not either Penſion or Fees allow'd him. By the ſaid Conſtitutions, this *Office* is veſted in the Biſhops of *Wincheſter* for the Time being; and it appears, from the *Annals* of the *Order*, that they have continu'd *Prelates*, without Interruption, to this Day; except *that* of a few Months only *an.* 7 *Edward* VI. immediately after publiſhing *that* King's Statutes; wherein the other four Officers were conſtituted anew, but the *Prelate* wholly ſet aſide. At the *Prelate*'s Admittance, He is oblig'd to take an *Oath* in the Preſence of the *Sovereign*, or his *Lieutenant*. The Oath is in *Latin*, ſet down by Mr. † *Aſhmole*, in his *Appendix*; the Subſtance in *Engliſh*, as follows.

* *Ed.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 18.

† *Num.* vi.

I. *To*

I. *To be preſent in all Chapters, whereunto he is ſummoned.*

II. *To report all Things truly, without Favour or Fear.*

III. *To take the Scrutiny faithfully, and preſent it to the* Sovereign.

IV. *To keep ſecret and not diſcloſe the Counſels of the* Order.

V. *To promote and maintain the Honour thereof.*

VI. *To withſtand and reveal what is deſigned to the contrary.*

THIS *Oath* is read or pronounc'd in *Chapter* by the *Regiſter* of the *Order*, the *Gentleman* Uſher of the *Black-Rod* holding the Book, whilſt the *Prelate* kneels between the *Sovereign*'s Knees.

THE *Robe* aſſign'd to the *Prelate*, comes from the *Sovereign*'s Wardrobe, as has been obſerv'd of the *Knights-Companion*'s Surcoats; and this *Robe* annually varied in Colour, as did the other's *Surcoats*. As the *Left* Shoulder of a *Knight-Companion*'s *Mantle*, ſo the *Right* Shoulder of the *Prelate*'s *Robe*, is ordained to be embroidered with a *Scutcheon* of St. *George*'s *Arms*, encompaſs'd with the Garter; and a-

dorned with *Cordons* of *Blue* Silk mingled with *Gold*.

In the 13 of *Charles* II. (by Warrant under the Signet of the *Order*) the *Prelate*'s *Robe*, aſſign'd him, was of *Purple Velvet*, containing 18 Yards, and 10 Yards of *White Taffaty* for Lining; as alſo a Scutcheon of St. George within a *Garter*, wrought with Letters and Purls of Damask Gold and Pearls, having Laces, Buttons, and Taſſels of Purple Silk and *Venice* Gold. As to the Times, the *Prelate* is enjoyn'd to wear this *Robe*, the Words are very expreſs in the * *Conſtitutiones ad Officiales &c.* before-mention'd; *That He ſhould be oblig'd to wear it yearly on the Vigil and Day of St.* George, *whereſoever He is at his Liberty, whether it be in Parliament, or any other ſolemn Occaſion, or Feſtival whatſoever.*

* *Cap.* 1.

The *Prelate*'s *Place*, in all Proceedings and Ceremonies of the *Order*, is on the Right Hand of the *Chancellor*; allowed to marſhal his *Arms* within the Ennobl'd *Garter*; to have convenient *Lodgings* within the Caſtle of *Windſor*, in a Tower ſituate on the North-

North Side of the Caſtle in the middle Ward, called * *Wincheſter-Tower*; and, as often as he ſhall come thither, or to any other Place, at the *Sovereign*'s Command, to do any Act or Thing relating to the *Order*, to be allow'd him of the *Court-Livery* † for himſelf and Servants, according to the Rate that *Earls*, reſident at Court, are us'd to have: And laſtly, at a Chapter held the 27th of *April ann.* 2 *Charles* I. this *Officer* (as alſo the *Chancellor*) had the Privilege granted, to wear upon the *Left Part* of his Cloak, Coat, and Riding-Caſſock, at all Times when he ſhould not wear his Robe, and in all Places and Aſſemblies, a *Scutcheon* of the *Arms* of St. GEORGE, but not enriched with Pearls or Stones. Not long after, there was ſome Reſtraint put upon this Act, tho' I do not find it repealed. Proceed we now to ſpeak of the *Chancellor*.

* *Lib. R.* *p.* 55.

† *Expræf.* Conſtitu. *ut ſupra.*

AT the Inſtitution of this moſt Noble *Order*, the *Common Seal* was ordained * to remain in the Cuſtody of whomſoever the *Sovereign* ſhou'd pleaſe; nevertheleſs, ſuch Perſon is expreſly appointed to be one of the

* *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 26.

† *Ib. Art.* 30. *Knights-Companions.* † But King *Edward* IV. finding it neceſſary to ſettle the Office of *Chancellor* of the *Garter*, in a Perſon diſtinct from the *Knights-Companions*, and ſubſervient to them, order'd in a *Chapter* held the 16th Year of his Reign, || *that the Seal of the Order ſhould be delivered to* Richard Beauchamp *then Biſhop of* Salisbury *to keep during Pleaſure*; and he to be called *Chancellor* of this moſt Noble *Order*. The ſame Prince did farther ordain, that, as this Office was great and of great Charge, and required an able and dextrous Perſon, none ſhould be admitted thereinto, unleſs he was of *Eccleſiaſtical Dignity*, that is to ſay, a *Biſhop*; and in particular, he both eſtabliſh'd the ſaid Richard Beauchamp, (in whoſe Dioceſs the Chappel of St. *George* was founded) *Chancellor* of the *Order* for his Life, and alſo that his Succeſſors, Biſhops of *Salisbury*, ſhou'd always have and hold the ſaid *Office* of *Chancellor*. Nevertheleſs in this Patent there is a Proviſo, that the King's Conceſſion ſhou'd be put in Execution by the Advice of the *Knights-Companions*, and without Pre-

|| *Lib. N. p.* 141.

Prejudice of the Biſhop of *Wincheſter* in thoſe Things, which, touching the Order, ought by the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution* to belong unto him. And thus the Biſhops of Salisbury, and no other Perſons, appear to have been inveſted with this *Office*, till *An.* 7. of *Edward* VI. that Sir *William Cecil*, then principal Secretary of State, was made *Chancellor*. For that Prince's *Statutes* wholly leave out the *Eccleſiaſticks*, and appoint, that the *Chancellor's Office* ſhou'd be executed by a *Knight*, duly qualified, as being one of known Extraction, expert, learned, and of untainted Reputation. Sir *William Cecil* enjoy'd this *Office* but a few Months, when Sir *William Petres* was admitted thereinto. And it does not appear, that any of the Biſhops of *Salisbury*, after the Reign of King *Edward* VI. concerned themſelves for recovering the Execution of this *Office* to their See, until the 6th of King *James*; when *Henry Cotton* Biſhop, upon the Death of Sir *Edward Dyer* ſome time *Chancellor*, ſet forth by Petition to the *Sovereign*, that this *Office* belong'd to him and his Succeſſors Biſhops of *Salisbury*,

lisbury, and humbly pray'd Reſtitution thereof: Whereupon the *Sovereign* firſt order'd the Matter to be well conſider'd of by the two Chief *Juſtices* and Chief *Baron*; and, in Purſuance of their Judgment, was pleas'd forthwith to nominate Sir *John Herbert* one of his Privy Council to the *Chancellorſhip*.

And thus this Affair ſlept, till *An.* 12 *Car.* I. when *John Davenant* Biſhop of *Salisbury* (Sir *Francis Crane Chancellor* being lately dead) with all due Humiliation remonſtrated to the *Sovereign*, that the *Office* of *Chancellor* was perpetually annexed to this See, by the Letters of King *Edward* IV. and tho' in following Times it had been beſtowed on Laymen, yet he humbly deſir'd his Right might be reſtor'd. This Petition had ſuch Effect, that, after many Objections made to it, the Sovereign was pleas'd juſtly to pronounce, *that the Biſhop ought to be heard*; and for that Purpoſe gave Orders to the *Knights-Commiſſioners*, who met thereupon; but this Affair not being then determin'd, and the *Scotch* War ſhortly after breaking forth, and Trou-

Troubles growing high at home, the farther Proſecution of it was laid aſide, and not reviv'd, till the 21ſt of *Car.* II. when *Seth Ward* Biſhop of *Salisbury* took Encouragement upon the former Grounds and the *Sovereign's* Favour, to ſet on Foot this Claim; which he did by a Petition preſented in *Chapter*, where after a full Debate and Conſideration had of the Juſtneſs of his Claim, he obtain'd a Decree * for the Re-eſtabliſhment of this *Office* on the Biſhop of that See, upon the firſt Vacancy.

* *V. Aſhm. p.* 243.

The Chancellor's *Oath* is the ſame with the *Prelate's*, which we mention'd before; and he takes *it* in the like humble Poſture, *viz.* upon the Knee, and 'tis uſually adminiſtred by the *Regiſter* of the *Order*.

The *Chancellor's Robe* was at firſt the ſame with the *Prelate's*, both for Cloth and Colour; but his Proportion of Cloth far leſs, having allowed him but 5 Yards, when the *Prelate* had 24, nor but three Timber of Miniver groſs, where the *Prelate* had 19, beſide a large Quantity of other Furs. Nor was the Colour *ſettled* to one Kind,

Kind, until the *Conſtitutions* of his *Office* * appointed it to be the ſame with the *Prelates*, viz. *Crimſon:* For no doubt, it was before annually changed (as was the *Prelates*) to the Colour of the *Knights-Companions Surcoats*; but wanted the Royal Badges, wherewith the *Prelate*'s *Robe* was then embroider'd.

* *Cap.* 2.

In the 13th of *Car.* II. the *Chancellor*'s *Robe* (as that of the *Prelate*'s) was changed to *Purple:* And beſides this Robe, the *Chancellor* has an honourable Badge aſſign'd him to wear; firſt granted to Sir *William Peters* and his Succeſſors,† *viz.* a *Roſe* Gold, encloſed within a *Garter*, which he and the ſucceeding *Chancellors* of the *Order* have ever ſince worn daily about their Necks; at firſt in a Gold Chain, but ſince in a *Purple Ribband.*

† 1 & 2 *of Phil.* & *Mary.*

The *Chancellor* has *Place* next beneath the *Prelate*, and in all Proceedings and Seſſions goeth and ſitteth on his Left Hand. And King *Charles* I. in a *Chapter* held *A. D.* 1629, was pleas'd to confer ſome farther Note of Honour upon this Officer, in relation to Place and Precedence without the

Order;

Order: For it was then decreed,* Sir *Francis Crane* being *Chancellor*, that he and all others that ſhall ſucceed him in that Place hereafter, ſhall, in Right of that Place, in all Aſſemblies and upon all Occaſions, be ranked and placed immediately after *Knights*, *Privy Counſellors*, and before the *Chancellor* of the *Exchequer*.

* *Lib. R.* *p.* 49.

By the *Conſtitutions* of the *Officers*,‖ the *Chancellor* of the *Order* is appointed an Habitation within the Caſtle of *Windeſor*, viz. the South-Weſt Tower, in the lower Ward of the *Caſtle*, hence called the *Chancellor's Tower*. The Poſſeſſion thereof having been for ſome time in the Hands of others, the ſame was, in a Chapter held 5 *Car.* I. decreed to be reſtored * to Sir *Francis Crane* then Chancellor of the *Order*, and after his Deceaſe, to deſcend to his Succeſſors in Right of this *Office*. Theſe Conſtitutions alſo ordained, that this *Officer* ſhou'd have the like *Diet* and *Liveries* in the *Sovereign's Court*, as were allowed to the *Prelate*.

‖ *Cap.* 2.

* *Lib. R.* *p.* 55.

At the Erection of this *Office*, the *Chancellor* had no *Penſion* allowed him towards defraying his Charge in the Exe-

ſince advanced in their Standards, both by Land and Sea.

BUT beſides this *Common Seal*, King *Hen.* V. in the 9th Year of his Reign,* inſtituted a *Privy Signet*, in caſe weighty Affairs ſhou'd occaſion the *Sovereign* to go out of this Kingdom: The Uſe whereof was to ſet to all Acts made by the *Sovereign* beyond Sea, to difference them from thoſe of his *Deputies* here in *England*.

* *Lib. N. p.* 67.

IN a *Chapter* held 13 *Car.* I. it was decreed, || that a *New Seal* ſhou'd be made, of a larger Size than formerly, with the accuſtomed *Arms* and *Motto*, and the Care thereof left to Sir *Tho. Rowe* the then *Chancellor*. This Command *He* executed with all due Conſideration, as appears by the Nobleneſs of the Deſign; the *Reverſe* of which *Seal* we have cauſed to be exhibited in the *Frontiſpiece* of this Book. In the ſame Decree Direction was given for making a new *Signet*, the former being thought too big for Letters; and *both* Seals were then appointed to be thenceforth † borne before the *Sovereign* in all Publick Aſſemblies, during the Celebration of St. *George*'s Feaſt,

|| Rowe's *Journal.*

† *Lib. R. p.* 120.

Feaſt, or in other its Solemnities, by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, in a Purſe of blue Velvet; which Purſe, by a Command given to Sir *Tho. Rowe*, was provided accordingly, richly embroider'd, with the *Arms* of St. *George* impaled with the *Sovereign's*, ſurrounded with a Garter and crowned, and a fair Compartiment round about.

By the *Conſtitutions* * for the *Officers* of the *Order*, the Diſtance from Court is limited to 10 Miles, and by the Statutes † of King *Henry* VIII. to 20 Miles. But in that, the Sovereign has been pleas'd ſometimes to diſpenſe.

* *Cap.* 2.

† *Art.* 29.

The next *Officer* to be ſpoken of, is the *Regiſter*, who, as we ſaid before, was one of the *three* conſtituted at the Inſtitution of the *Order*, under the Title of *Regiſtrator* and *Regiſtrarius*. In the *Black Book* He is often ſtyled *Scriba*, and in the *Regiſtrum Chartaceum*, and *Blue Book*, *Actuarius*. Who or what the *Regiſters* were, we are at a Loſs, till the Reign of *Henry* V. but it may be preſumed they were *Canons* of *Windſor*, becauſe this Office was at

first appointed to * one of the College, *viz.* a † *Canon Reſident* there; and from the *Black Book* it appears, the *Canons* were all along *Regiſters* from *Hen.* V. to the Beginning of *Hen.* VIII. one *John Coringham* being the *firſt* ſo called.

* *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 43.

† *Ord. Stat. in Bibl. Hatt. Art.* 36.

THE firſt *Dean* of *Windſor*, conſtituted *Regiſter* of the *Order*, was *John Veſey* || *An.* 8 *Henry* VIII. And 'tis not unlike, but that the *Deans* were made choice of for this Employment, as being better enabled to ſupport the Reputation of the *Regiſterſhip* with the Revenue of this Dean'ry: However, at a *Chapter* held 11 *Car.* I. 'twas then determin'd, and entred among the *Annals* of the *Order*, that for the future the *Dean* and *Regiſter* ſhou'd meet in one and the ſame Perſon.

|| *Regiſt. Char. f.* 53. 6.

THE Qualifications requiſite in a *Regiſter*, are in general, (whether he be a *Secular* * or *Eccleſiaſtic*) *that He be a very knowing Perſon, able to perform the Office, and moſt fit both for Learning and Vertue.*

* *V. Conſtitut. Offic. in Lib. N. Cap.* 3. *V. E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 34.

BY the Statutes of *Henry* VIII. the ſame *Oath* is enjoyned the *Regiſter* as the

the *Prelate* and *Chancellor* took; the Nature of which *Oath* we have * already obſerv'd. When *He* is admitted, *He* takes *it* kneeling at the *Sovereign*'s Feet, whilſt the *Prelate*, if preſent, or elſe the *Chancellor* adminiſters; the *Black Rod* holding the Evangeliſts, and *Garter* reading the Words.

* *V. ſupra* p. 149.

THE *Habit* aſſign'd this *Officer* at the Inſtitution of the *Order* does not appear; but afterwards by the *Precedent* for the *Livery* of the *Garter*, we find that *His* Allowance was the ſame with the *Chancellor*'s, that being five Yards of Woollen Cloth, and three Timber of Miniver groſs, and as much as thoſe *Knights Companions* had, who were under the Degree of an *Earl*. Since the Time of *Hen.* VIII. both the *Regiſter*'s, *Garter*'s, and *Black Rod*'s Robes, were alter'd by a Decree in *Chapter* held 4 & 5 of *Phil.* and *Mar.* having then aſſign'd 'em *Mantles* of *Crimſon Sattin*, lined with *Taffaty*, and a Scutcheon of St. *George*'s Arms embroider'd on the Left Shoulder, but not encompaſſed with a *Garter*, having like Buttons and Taſſels, as were appointed the *Prelate* and *Chancellor*.

The Proportion of *Sattin* aſſigned to each *Mantle*, was 14 Yards, and as many Yards of white *Taffaty*. In the 27th of Q. *Eliz.* the *Regiſter*'s *Mantle* had 18 Yards of Crimſon Sattin, and but 12 of *Taffaty*. And thus theſe Mantles continu'd unalterable, till the *Reſtoration*; when this *Officer*, as alſo *Garter* and *Black-Rod*, had *Mantles* appointed them of *Scarlet Sattin*, each containing 18 Yards, and 10 Yards of white *Taffaty* for Lining, but agreeable in all other Things with the former: Yet why the *Colour* was alter'd, the Warrant does not expreſs.

The *Regiſter*, as it ſhou'd ſeem, did heretofore, at the Publick Solemnities of the *Order*, carry a *Scrowl* in his Hand, and, in Q. *Eliz.* Reign, a *Book*, *both* proper Symbols of his Office.

In Dr. *Chriſtopher Wren*'s Regiſterſhip, the *Sovereign* gave him Command to cover the *Red Book* of the *Order* with Crimſon Velvet, and aſſigned for the Device two Pens in Saltire within the *Garter*, above which theſe two Letters C. R. crowned; all being wrought in rich Embroidery (ſo alſo the Border) with *Venice* Gold and Silver,

ver, Purls and Plates of Gold and Silver, and various Colours of *Naples* Silk; coſt 12 *l.* 17 *s.* 6 *d.* This Book he was commanded to bear before his Breaſt, on all ſolemn Occaſions, when he wore his Mantle; and thereupon, for his better Eaſe and Convenience, he made a Belt and Ouch to hang it at.

So great a Regard had the *Sovereigns* of this *Order* to this *Officer*, as alſo to *Garter* and *Black Rod*, that they took 'em into a particular Protection, as well their *Goods* and *Servants*, as their own Perſons; of which Mr. *Aſhmole* has recorded two Inſtances, * relating to Dr. *Chriſtopher Wren* Regiſter.

* *P.* 251.

The *Regiſter* by the *Conſtitutions* † of his *Office*, has a *Penſion* of 50 *l. per An.* allowed him; and in 1 & 2 of *Phil.* and *Mar.* ‖ the like Penſion was granted to *Owen Oglethorp* Dean of *Windſor*, out of the Exchequer, until ſome Eccleſiaſtical Preferment of like Value ſhou'd be conferr'd on him by the *Sovereign*.

† *Cap.* 3.

‖ *Lib. C. P.* 18.

The *Regiſter*, by the *Conſtitutions* * of his *Office*, was obliged to provide

* *Lib. N. P.* 235.

two *Books*, and therein to enter the *Ordinances* and *Statutes*, with other *Acts* of the *Order*; whereof one was appointed to be kept in the *Chapter-Houſe* at *Windſor*, and called *Index Windeſorienſis*; and the other, a Duplicate, to remain in the *Regiſter*'s keeping, ready at hand to ſhew the *Sovereign*, whenever he ſhou'd require it; and this latter was called *Aulæ Regiſtrum.*

As to the general Directions given for compiling theſe *Books*, and of what Particulars they are principally to conſiſt, we have ſome Information from the *Statutes* of the *Order* and the foreſaid *Conſtitutions*. For,

Firſt, The *Regiſter*'s Duty, is to record the * *Penalties inflicted on* Knights Companions *and the Reaſon thereof, the Reconciliation of thoſe that have ſuffered Penalties as Delinquents, with other Acts and their Cauſes, appertaining to the Order.* And theſe are decreed to be recited † before the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, at the Beginning of the *Chapter*, yearly on the Eve of St. *Geogre*; to the ned they may be cor-

* Ed. 3. *Stat. Art.* 34.

† E. 3. *Stat. Art.* 34.

corrected, and reduced into Method, if need require.

Secondly, He is, by the foresaid *Constitutions, to make Entry of all the Policies* * *in War, Exploits, Transactions, and memorable Achievements, both of the* Sovereign *and* Knights-Companions, *according as he can best attain the Knowledge of them, either by his own diligent Search, or the Assistance of Mr. Garter: Which having first set down and committed to writing, as Passages and Accidents happen from Year to Year, whatsoever is thus noted by him, is to be read and perused at the next* Chapter, *by the* Knights-Companions *there assembled; that if any thing be found to stand in need of Correction, it may there be forthwith amended; and again in like manner at another Chapter afterwards; which done, he is to take care, that they be fairly ingrossed in the foresaid* Book, *for a perpetual Memorial.* And in the 20th of King *James*, it was decreed † by the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions, that nothing of this Nature, or any other act in Chapter shou'd be registred, before it had been perused and considered by the then* Knights-Commissioners,

* *Lib. N.* p. 235.

† *Lib. R.* p. 13.

miſſioners, *or at leaſt four of them*; who, when they ſhou'd ſet times apart, to conſult of the Affairs of the *Order*, for which they were chiefly conſtituted, might then alſo make uſe of ſuch Opportunities, as ſhou'd give this Buſineſs Diſpatch with more Conveniency. And in Conſideration of theſe *Injunctions*, the *Regiſter* did (*Ann.* 22 *Car.* II.) exhibit * the Continuation of the *Annals* of this Noble *Order*, which he had prepared to regiſter in the *Liber Carolinus*, and humbly ſubmitted it to the Peruſal and Approbation of the *Knights-Companions* whom the *Sovereign* had deputed to take into their Conſideration the Affairs of the *Order*; which Tender when they declined, he propoſed that it might be examined by the *Prelate*, but that not being liked by them (on Conſideration that the *Regiſter* was obliged under an *Oath*, to deal faithfully in his *Report*) it was decreed, † *that the ſaid Annals ſhould be recorded in the ſaid* Book *without any farther Examination.*

* *Lib. Carol. p.* 76.

† *Ib.*

Thirdly, Beſides the above-mention'd Particulars, there were Materials of another Nature, ordered to be col-

collected, both from the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and *Garter Principal King of Arms*, to be digeſted by the *Regiſter*, and entred alſo upon Record; for, whereas one Part of the *Chancellor*'s Duty, was to *ſet forth* * *and declare every Year in* Chapter, *at the Feaſt of St.* GEORGE, *the Renowned and Praiſe-worthy Acts of the* Knights *of this* Order, *as many as had ſo merited; and as for thoſe who had deſerved the contrary, to make Relation alſo of their ſcandalous and diſgraceful Actions*, the *Regiſter* was to take theſe in Writing, and record them for a Memorial of their Honour or Shame, never to end. And it is Part of the Duty of Mr. *Garter* †, *diligently and induſtriouſly to make Enquiry after the valiant, fortunate, and renowned Acts, both of the* Sovereign, *and the reſt of the* Knights-Companions, *which having learnt, he is to make a true and faithful Relation of them to the* Regiſter, *to be by him entred upon Record for a perpetual Memorial.* But we find very little of this hitherto done, and how ſparingly inſerted, the *Annals* themſelves are but too evident Witneſſes. Nevertheleſs, the late *Garter*,

* *Lib. N. p.* 234.

† *Ib. p.* 237.

Sir

Sir *Edward Walker* drew up a faithful Account of the noble Actions and Characters of the *Knights-Companions*, beginning with *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford*, and continuing it down to his Son; which he deliver'd to Dr. *Ryves* then *Regiſter*, for the Uſe aforedirected.

Fourthly, Among the *Articles* eſtabliſh'd at the Feaſt of St. GEORGE (21 of King *James*) the laſt is, **That the then* Regiſter *of the* Order *ſhould compoſe a* Book, *wherein ſhould be orderly tranſcribed the Form and Manner of all the* Solemnities, Ceremonies, *and* Proceſſions, *which were accuſtomably uſed at the Feaſt of St.* GEORGE, *and Celebration of the* Order, *as alſo of taking down and offering the* Defunct Knight's Achievements, *to the end the* Knights-Companions, *upon Recourſe to it, might have full Information thereof.* But, after much Enquiry, we do not find that ſuch a *Book* was drawn up by him, or any of his Succeſſors.

* *Lib. R. p.* 16.

Fifthly, Whereas by a *Law* † within this *Order*, all *Nominations* and *Votes* of the *Knights-Companions* ought to be entred among the *Annals*, this like-

† *Lib. C. p.* 42.

likewiſe is incumbent on the *Regiſter*, *viz.* to ſet down and record, as well ſuch *Nominations* and *Votes*, as the *Names* of the *Knights* elected; unleſs it ſhall pleaſe the *Sovereign*, for any extraordinary Reaſons, upon particular Occaſions, to forbid it. And this was once done by Queen *Elizabeth*, in the 40th Year of her Reign; tho' noted in the *Annals*, to be *præter morem*, contrary to the uſual Cuſtom. We proceed now, in ſpeaking to the next *Officer* belonging to this Noble *Order*, *viz. Garter*, the principal *Officer* within the *Office* of *Arms*.

For ſo K. *Henry* V. (which was confirm'd by *Henry* VIII.) for the Dignity of the *Order*, did ordain * and conſtitute. The Services enjoyned this *Officer*, as relating to the *Order*, were in Time preceding perform'd by † *Windſor*, *Herald* at Arms, an *Officer* created with that Title, by King *Edward* III. much about the Time of his Inſtituting the *Order*; and an Annual Penſion of 20 *Marks* granted him out of the *Exchequer*, by *Letters Patent* for Life.

* *V. Aſhm. in Append. N.v.*

† *Collect. W. Le N. Cl.*

Sir

SIR *William Brugges* was the Perſon firſt created *Garter*, and called in the Inſtitution of his Officer, *Jartier Roy d' Armes des Anglois.* There have been ſome ſmall Variations in the Title; but ſince the Time of Sir *Gilbert Dethick*, it has continu'd *Principalis Rex Armorum Anglicorum*, Principal King of *Engliſh* Arms.

BY the *Conſtitutions* of his *Office* 'tis requir'd, that he be a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, of untainted Reputation, and born within the Kingdom of *England.*

'THE *Oath* is adminiſtred in *Latin* * by the *Regiſter* at his Admiſſion, whilſt he humbly kneels at the *Sovereign's* Feet. The Subſtance of the *Oath* is, as follows, *viz.*

* *V. Aſhm. App. N. vii.*

I. *To yield Obedience to the* Sovereign *and* Knights Companions.

II. *To keep Silence, and not diſcloſe the Secrets of the* Order.

III. *To make Signification of the Death of each* Knight-Companion.

IV. *To execute all Things faithfully, committed to his Care.*

V. *To*

V. *To enquire diligently after all the* Noble Acts *of the* Knights-Companions, *and certifie them to the* Regiſter.

VI. *To be faithful in the Exerciſe of his* Office.

As to the *Habit* of this *Officer*, it does not appear, he had any aſſign'd him at firſt, but was diſtinguiſh'd from the reſt of the *Officers* of the *Order*, by his *Coat* only, embroidered with the *Sovereign*'s Arms, like as the Provincial Kings then wore. But after the *Conſtitutions* of the *Officers* were eſtabliſhed, there was appointed him a Habit, * in all Things like to the *Regiſter*'s (ſaving that the Ground whereon the *Lions* and *Flowers de Lis* were embroider'd, was wholly *Red*) and this to be worn only at the publick Solemnities of the *Order*. Queen *Mary* caus'd it to be made of *Crimſon Sattin*; But ſoon after the Reſtoration 'twas alter'd to *Scarlet*. * C. 4.

THIS *Officer* is appointed to bear a *White Rod*, or *Scepter* at every Feaſt of St. GEORGE (the *Sovereign* being preſent) gilded at both Ends, and at the

the Top a Scutcheon of the Arms of the *Order*, impaled with the *Sovereign*'s *Arms*.

QUEEN *Elizabeth* aſſign'd this *Officer* a *Badge* of Gold, to be worn daily by him and his Succeſſors, before the Breaſt, in a Gold Chain or Ribband, and thereon Enamel'd the *Sovereign*'s *Arms*, crowned with an Imperial Crown, and both ſurrounded with the Princely *Garter*: But Sir *Edward Walker*, when made *Garter*, obtained the *Sovereign*'s Licence to impale therein St. *George*'s *Arms* with thoſe of the *Sovereigns* of the *Order*; of which *Badge*, the Foreſide and Backſide are both alike.

THERE is a Houſe appointed for his Habitation within *Windſor Caſtle*, and is the Middle *Weſt Tower* in the lower Ward, which thereupon has gain'd the Name of *Garter*'s *Tower*. It was by a Decree in *Chapter* * annex'd for ever to the *Office* of *Garter*, and reſtored to Sir *William Segar*'s Poſſeſſion, *A. D.* 1630. By the *Conſtitutions* † of his *Office*, He is to be allowed *Baron Service* in the *Sovereign*'s Court, and his Table ſerv'd next after the Dean of

* *Lib. R.* p. 55.

† *Cap.* 4.

of the Chappel, with ſuch *Liveries* as of old were accuſtomed.

THIS *Officer*'s Penſion was never well ſettl'd, till, upon the Petition of Sir *Edward Walker Garter*, (15 *Car.* II.) an *Hundred Pounds per ann.* was, by the *Sovereign*'s *Order*, ſettled on him and his Succeſſors, to be paid by the *Chancellor*, out of the yearly Revenue, aſſign'd to the Uſe of the *Order*.

TOUCHING the Duty of this *Officer* in general, 'tis to perform or cauſe to be done, what Buſineſs ſoever, relating to this *Order*, the *Sovereign*, or *Prelate*, or *Chancellor*, ſhall enjoyn him to do: But his Duty in particular will be beſt ſeen, as it occurs hereafter in ſeveral Places, proper to be taken notice of.

THE other *Office* to be ſpoke to, is that of the *Black Rod*, inſtituted by the *Founder* of this moſt Noble *Order*; but whether ſo ſoon as the *Order* itſelf, does not yet appear: However, within a few Years after, we find a Grant || of this Office, under the Name of *Officium Hoſtiarii Capellæ Regis infra Caſtrum de Windeſore*, with a Fee of 12 Pence a Day out of the *Exchequer*.

|| *Pat.* 50. *Ed.* 3. *p.* 1. *M.* 25. *&c.*

This

This *Officer* has various Titles; ſometimes call'd *Virgæ-Bajulus*, *Virgarius*, or *Nigri-Virgifer*; and, in the *Conſtitutions* * of his *Office*, *Hoſtiarius*; where likewiſe the Qualifications are named, *viz. That he be a Gentleman of Blood and Arms; born within the* Sovereign's *Dominions; and if he be not a* Knight *at his Entrance upon the Office, he ought then to be Knighted.*

* *Cap.* 5.

This *Officer*, for the Honour of the *Order*, was appointed the *Chief Uſher* in the Kingdom; and in a *Chapter* held (6 *Car.* I.) it was decreed, † *That the Office of* Black Rod *ſhould from thenceforth ſucceſſively, as ſoon as the ſame ſhould become void, be annex'd to ſome one of the* Gentlemen Ushers daily Waiters, *whom the Sovereign ſhould appoint.* But this met with ſome Obſtructions, till the 13th of *Charles* II. when in *Chapter* the ſaid Decree was fully confirm'd.

† *Lib. R. p.* 71.

The *Oath*, as we find it given to *this Officer*, in the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. was, ‖ *Truly and faithfully to obſerve and keep all the Points of the* Statutes *of the* Order, *as to him belonged and appertained.*

‖ *V. Aſhm. Append. N.* viii.

He

HE has the like *Habit* with the *Regiſter* and *Garter*, before deſcribed: But his *Enſign* and *Badge* are ſomewhat different from *Garter*'s; for

I. IT was ordained, **That he or his Deputy ſhould carry a* Black Rod (whence he hath his ordinary Title) *before the* Sovereign *or his* Deputy, *at the Feaſt of St.* GEORGE, *within the Caſtle of* Windſor, *and at other Solemnities and Chapters of the* Order. On the Top of which Rod there ought to be ſet a *Lion* of *England*. This *Rod* ſerves inſtead of a *Mace*, and hath the ſame Authority to apprehend ſuch Perſons as ſhall be found Delinquents, and have offended againſt the *Statutes* and *Ordinances* of this moſt Noble *Order*. And if † at the Command of the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* he ſhould apprehend any one of the *Order*, as guilty of ſome Crime, for which he is to be expelled from the *Order*, it is to be done by touching them with this *Black Rod*, in Conſideration whereof his Fee is 5*l*.

* *Pat.* 50 *Ed.* 3. p. 1. *M.* 25 & *conſtitut. Offic. C.* 5.

† *Ib.*

THERE is alſo aſſign'd him a Gold *Badge*, to be openly worn in a Gold Chain or Ribband before his Breaſt,

compoſed of one of the *Knots* in the *Collar* of the *Garter*, which tye the Roſes together, and encompaſs'd with the Ennobl'd *Garter*, being alike on both Sides; which Honour is conferred on him and his Succeſſors by a Decree in *Chapter an.* 8. *Elizabeth.*

IN *Henry* V's Reign we find a Houſe in *Windſor Caſtle* granted to this *Officer* by *Letters Patent*, * together with his Office, during Life; and the like Proviſion is made for him by the *Conſtitutions* † of his *Office*. It is ſituate on the South-ſide of the *Caſtle* in the middle Ward. The ſaid *Conſtitutions* give him *Baron Service* at Court, and *Livery* thereto appertaining; and beſides theſe, the *Keeping* ‖ of the ſaid *Caſtle*, and the two *Parks* adjacent.

* *Pat.* 1 *Hen.* 5. *p.* 3. *M.* 18.

† *Cap.* 5.

‖ *Ib.*

KING *Charles* I. having taken into his Hands the *Little Park* of *Windſor* (by the Reſignation of Sir *William Hewyd*, who had it by Grant under the Great Seal of *England*) and beſtowed it upon *James Maxwell* Eſquire, then *Uſher* of the *Order*; He alſo thought fit, with the Advice and Conſent of the *Knights-Companions*, at a *Chapter* held 1629, to order and decree,

cree, that as the Cuſtody of the ſaid *Little Park* was conferr'd on Mr. *Maxwell* in Right of his *Office*, (purſuant to the Inſtitution) ſo the ſame ſhould *for ever after be annexed* thereto, and not be diſpoſed of, but under the *Great Seal* of the *Order*, and that only to the *Uſher* of the *Order* for the Time being.

THIS *Officer* had anciently a *Fee* * of 12 *d.* a Day allowed him, which we find continu'd down in the *Letters Patent*, whereby this Office was granted; beſides which, the *Conſtitutions* † of his *Office* allow him an annual Penſion of 30 *l.* heretofore paid him out of the *Sovereign*'s Exchequer; but by King *Charles* I. aſſign'd him out of the 1200 *l. per ann.* ſettl'd upon the *Order*.

* *Pat.* 50 *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *M.* 25.

† *Cap.* 5.

THIS new Eſtabliſhment was firſt ſet on foot by King *James*, who, conceiving it incongruous, that the Officers ſhould longer receive or challenge their *Penſions* by vertue of any other *Seal* than that of the *Order*, did, in a *Chapter* held the 20th of his Reign, ordain, ‖ *That all Things concerning the Order ſhould thereafter be paſſed under*

‖ *Ex ipſo Autogr. V. Lib. R. p.* 12.

der the Seal *of the* Order *only; and in particular, that the* Grants *of* Poor Knight's Places, *after their being ſigned by the* Sovereign, *ſhould be paſſed under the* Seal *of the* Order *only, and none other.* And the next Year, his Majeſty's Pleaſure was farther ſignify'd,* *That all* Grants *and* Payments *concerning the* Order, *ſhould afterwards paſs under the* Seal *of the* Order *only, and by vertue thereof.*

* *Lib. R. p.* 15

THIS Decree does not appear to have been obſerv'd in *all* Points: But in a Chapter held at *Windſor*, † the 10th of King *Charles* I. we find an annual Sum of 1000 *l.* aſſign'd out of the Receipts of the Exchequer, for the peculiar Uſe of the *Order*; which Royal Aſſignment was || ratified in another *Chapter*, held about 3 Years after, with an Addition of 200 *l. per ann.* ſettl'd in a Perpetuity for ever; made payable out of the *Cuſtoms* in the Port of *London*; and to be received and accounted for, * by the *Chancellor* of the *Order* for the Time being, as *Treaſurer* of this Money. And thus, by a *Commiſſion*, which paſs'd the *Great Seal* (14. *Car.* I.) the ſaid *Chancellor*

† *Lib. C. p.* 94.

|| *Ib. p.* 121.

* *Ib. p.* 134.

cellor is impower'd to pay, out of the ſaid annual Revenue of 1200 *l.* the following yearly *Penſions*, *viz.*

		l.	*s.*	*d.*
To	Himſelf as *Chancellor*	100	0	0
	Regiſter of the *Order*	50	0	0
	Garter Prin. K. of *Arms*	50	0	0
	Uſher of the *Black Rod*	30	0	0
	13 *Alms-Knights*	237	5	0
	Total	467	50	

Theſe yearly *Penſions* are to be paid quarterly, *viz.* at the 4 uſual Feaſts in the Year. As alſo any other Annual and uſual Charge, to any other inferiour Officer or Servant, for their Service or Attendance.

BESIDES theſe Annual *Penſions*, Proviſion was hereby made, for Defraying all Expences relating to the *Feaſts* of the *Order*, *Legations* to *Foreign Princes*, and whatever ſhould at any Time be disburſed for the Neceſſity or Reputation of the ſaid moſt Noble *Order*.

ALL the *Officers* of the *Order* are ſtrictly obliged perſonally to attend the Duties of their ſeveral Places; yet

in caſe of Sickneſs, Abſence out of the Kingdom, or other lawful or emergent Cauſe, the *Sovereign* hath pleaſed to diſpenſe with their Attendance, and appointed others to officiate in their ſtead; who on ſuch Occaſions wear the *Robe* of that *Officer* for whom they ſerve; ſo alſo in Caſe of Vacancy. It may now be proper to conſider in the next place, what is to be done, and what the *Ceremonial*, at the *Election* of a *Knight* into this Noble *Order*. And firſt,

* *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 18.

THE *Statutes* of *Inſtitution* ordain'd, * *that whenſoever any of the* Knights-Companions *happen'd to depart this Life, the* Sovereign (*or His* Deputy) *after certain Notice had thereof, ſhould forthwith by his* Letters *ſummon all the* Knights-Companions *then within the Realm, who were able to come to meet him within 6 Weeks after ſuch Notice, in what convenient Place ſoever He pleaſed to aſſign, for the* electing *a new* Companion *into the Society.* Thus did the Law of this moſt noble *Order*, in Caſe of *Death*, and to avoid long *Vacancies*, at firſt provide; wherewith we obſerve, the Practice of elder Times

Times did punctually concurr. This was farther explain'd in a * *Chapter* held the 21ſt of King *James*, at *Windſor*; where in the firſt place it was thus decreed, that the *Sovereign* being advertiſed of the Death of a *Knight-Companion* of the *Order*, the *Knights-Companions* remaining at the Court ſhould move Him to declare his Pleaſure, whether He would that *Letters* ſhou'd be ſent to all the *Knights-Companions* within the Realm, to attend his Perſon for the Choice of a new *Knight*, at a Day by the ſaid *Sovereign* appointed, according to the ancient Statutes of the *Order*; or be pleaſed to deferr the *Election* until the Day and Feaſt of St. *George*, at what Time Elections have been moſt uſually made; wherein the *Sovereign's* Pleaſure and Direction was to be followed and obſerved; and according as He reſolved, in what Place it ſhou'd be, ſo it ought to be made known unto them. But of later Times, this formal Way of Summons by *Letter* to *Knights-Companions* attending at the Court, hath been left off (yet continued to ſuch as are remote) and Notice given

* *Lib. R.* p. 14.

them by a verbal Meſſage only: For the *Chancellor* of the *Order* having known the *Sovereign*'s Pleaſure, as to the Day and Place, uſually acquaints *Garter* therewith, who thereupon goes immediately to the *Knights-Companions* then at Court, and deſires their Attendance at the *Chapter*, according to the *Sovereign*'s Appointment.--- But no *Knights-Elect* ought to be ſummoned to a *Chapter* of *Election*, or are capable of giving their Votes therein, until they be completely *inſtalled*, either in Perſon or by Proxy: Nor indeed did any Neceſſity fall out, from the Foundation of the *Order*, that did require they ſhould, until the late Rebellious Times, when the Caſtle of *Windſor* being garriſon'd by the Parliament's Forces, it was not poſſible for his Royal Highneſs the Duke of *York*, and his Highneſs Prince *Rupert*, to take Poſſeſſion of their *Stalls*, in ſuch manner, as the *Law* of the *Order* enjoyned; which therefore was diſpens'd with; thoſe *Princes* being inveſted with all the Privileges of the *Order*; among which, the Power of giving their Votes in *Chapter* was one;

pro-

provided, theſe *Princes* ſhould firſt take the *Oath* given at Inſtallations, and afterwards perform the accuſtomed Ceremonies at *Windſor*, ſo ſoon as it ſhould be thought fit, after the Caſtle was deliver'd out of the Power of the Rebells, and returned into the Poſſeſſion of the Sovereign of this moſt Noble *Order*; all which was done and perform'd by the ſaid *Princes*, upon the Reſtoration.

To conſtitute a complete *Chapter* of *Election*, the *Statutes* require,* there ſhould be *Six Knights-Companions* at the leaſt, beſides the *Sovereign* or His *Deputy*; the due Obſervation of which has been ſo ſtrictly ſtood upon heretofore, that *Elections* were ordinarily deferred, where the *Chapters* conſiſted not of ſo many. And tho' Diſpenſations in this Matter have been made uſe of by the *Sovereigns* in later Times, yet it ought to be conſider'd, that the Licence herein, is generally no other than an Advantage to be laid hold on, in Caſes of Neceſſity only, (for Neceſſity can bring a ſufficient Plea, where the Infringement of a Decree is objected, in the Law of this *Order*) and withall

* *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 18. *H.*8. *Stat. Art.* 19.

to

to ſhew, that the Power and Prerogative of *Diſpenſation* is reſerved to the *Sovereigns* of this moſt Noble *Order*, in all Caſes of Exigency: Albeit not to be made uſe of, where there is a Poſſibility of performing the Rules and Injunctions of the *Statutes*.

WHEN the *Chapter* opens, neither the *Sovereign* of the *Order*, nor any of the *Knights-Companions* are to enter, without wearing both their *Mantles* and *Garters*: For ſo the *Statutes* † of the *Order* ordain, and ſo hath the Law been underſtood, in caſe where a *Chapter* has been held elſewhere than at *Windſor*; as for inſtance, at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, for the Election of *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhine* (*Ann.* 20 *Eliz.*) the * Earl of *Huntingdon*, and the Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*, not having their *Mantles* then at Court, were not permitted to enter into that *Chapter*, to give their *Votes* for his Election.

† *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 3.

* *MSS. quart. penes W. le N. Cl. f.* 23. *b.*

INDEED King *Charles* I. when He had determin'd to call a *Chapter* for electing that *deſerving* and *renowned* Knight, *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford* at *York*, where neither *He* nor any of the *Knights-*

Knights-Companions then attending his Perſon, had their *Robes* of the *Order* with them, and taking notice of the Injunction of the *Statutes* now mention'd, did by his Supreme Authority, as *Sovereign* of the *Order*, diſpenſe with the *Knights-Companions* then preſent, for coming into the *Chapter* without their *Mantles*. But to proceed. ---

WHEN a full Number of *Knights-Companions* (in Obedience to their Summons) are attending the *Sovereign*, habited in their *Mantles* and *Garters*, and entred into the *Chapter-Houſe* at *Windſor*, or other Place appointed for this their Aſſembly; and the *Sovereign* taking his Seat, at the upper End of the Table, hath given leave to the *Knights-Companions* to ſit; the Occaſion of their being called together is *firſt* declared, either by the *Sovereign* himſelf, or by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, upon his Command.

THE next thing in Courſe, is to give the *Sovereign* Information of all the *Stalls* then void; which is done by the *Chancellor*, or in his Abſence, by the *Regiſter* or other *Officer* of the *Order*.

THIS

THIS done, the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* enter into Conſideration, how the room of the defunct *Knight* or *Knights* ſhall be ſupplied; and ſometimes (where two or more *Stalls* are found void) whether they ſhall be all fill'd up at that Time; or if not, how many *Knights* then to be elected.

AFTER this, the *Chancellor* begins to collect the *Knights-Companions* Votes; and this is frequently termed, the taking of a *Scrutiny*; for the better underſtanding of which, we may obſerve, as follows, *viz.*

I. THE *Nomination* of thoſe Perſons propoſed to the *Sovereign*'s Election, belongs only to ſuch of the *Knights-Companions* as are preſent in *Chapter*, when the *Scrutiny* is taken: Nay, ſuch as come late to the *Chapter*, loſe likewiſe the Privilege of giving their *Votes* for that Time.

II. THO' the *Knights-Companions* preſent in *Chapter* can at their Pleaſures, *nominate* or propoſe to Election ſuch Perſons as they think fit, ſo they be qualified according to the *Statutes* of the *Order*; yet this Privilege is to be

be underſtood of *Knights Subjects* only: For in all Caſes concerning *Strangers*, the *Sovereign* doth but permit, and may direct and confine the *Knights-Companions* to the *Nomination* of ſuch, as *He* at any time intends to elect; which Prerogative we find more particularly aſſerted in the 31ſt of Queen *Eliz.* and 3 of King *Charles* I. And in the 19th of the ſaid King's Reign, 'twas mov'd in *Chapter*, * *that it might become a Cuſtom for the* Sovereign *to declare beforehand, whether He would elect any* Foreign Prince, *and whom; that ſo the* Knights-Companions *might be ſure to* name *him in the* Scrutiny.

* *Ex Autogr. penes Fac. Palmer.*

III. By the *Statutes* † of *Inſtitution*, every one of the *Knights-Companions* preſent at the Election, is *to nominate for himſelf* Nine *very ſufficient Perſons, whom he ſhall judge free from all Reproach and Scandal, whether Subjects to the Sovereign or Foreigners; provided they are known not to favour or abet any Party at Enmity with him*, viz. three Earls, *or others of higher Degree*; three Barons, *and* three Knights. Tho' *three* of the *nine* here named are appointed to be *Barons*, and *three* other *Earls* or of

† *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 18.

of a higher Degree, yet muſt theſe *ſix* be ſuch, as have received the *Order* of *Knighthood*; elſe ought not their Names to be either given or taken in Nomination; for the Text is plain, *that each of the Knights aſſembled at the Election ſhall name nine* * Knights. And thus King *Charles* I. in the 6th Year of his Reign, intending to chooſe *James* Marqueſs *Hamilton* into the Society of this *Order*, conferr'd the Honour of *Knighthood* || upon him immediately before his *Nomination*; and the *Annals* in that Place give this Remark upon the Action, and the Reaſon for it, *viz.* * *becauſe by the* Statutes *it is provided, that none ſhould be elected into the* Order, *that have not been dignified with the Title of* Knight.

* *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 20.

|| *Lib. R. p.* 59.

* *Ib.*

Yet it ſeems, the Ceremony of *Knighting* the Perſon deſigned for *Election*, was not ſo ſtrictly and duly obſerved as it ought; but that ſome time this Branch of the Statute was either not taken notice of, or elſe confounded with the ſecond *Article*, throughout the ſeveral *Bodies* of the *Statutes*, which prohibits the Choice or *Election* of any Perſon into the *Society*, as this does

does the *Propoſal* or *Nomination*; and thereupon perhaps it was conceived, that altho' the *Nomination*, *Election*, and ſometimes Delivery of the *Enſigns* of the *Order*, were *firſt* diſpatch'd and paſs'd, yet it was well enough if the Honour of *Knighthood* was conferr'd *afterward*; of which there have been ſeveral Inſtances.

IV. By the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, the Collecting the *Knights-Companions Votes*, and Entring them in the *Scrutiny*, properly belongs to the *Prelate* of the *Order*, who is likewiſe oblig'd thereunto by his *Oath*. Nevertheleſs the *Statutes* provided, that if the *Prelate* was at any Time abſent, then the *Dean* of *Windſor*, or the *Regiſter*, or the *Senior Reſidentiary* of the *College*, or the *Secretary* or *Scribe* of the *Order*, ſhould undertake the Employment; and the *Conſtitutions* of the Officers ſay, the *Chancellor*, *Dean*, or *Regiſter*, ſhall in like caſe do it; which when they did, it is frequently mentioned to be performed by them, *In Abſence of the Prelate*, * as implying a Reſervation of his Right to the Employment; or as in another Place more

* *Lib. N.* p. 77. & 89.

Ib. p. 84. more expreſly, † *In the Abſence of the* Prelate, *whoſe particular Duty otherwiſe it had been:* Of which ſeveral Inſtances are given us in the *Annals* of the *Order.*

V. The *Time*, when the *Knights-Companion's Suffrages* are collected, was uſually after the *Chapter* had been opened, and the Matter of *Election* propoſed by the *Sovereign*; when the *Officer* uſually proceeded with great Reverence and all poſſible Reſpect. Howbeit upon an extraordinary Occaſion (in the Interval of the Grand *Feaſts*) the *Sovereign* hath ſometimes cauſed an Aſſembly of the *Knights-Companions* to be had at the Caſtle of *Windſor*, who in the *Choir* of St. *George's Chappel* (not *Chapter-Houſe*) after the more ſolemn Way, have deliver'd in their *Nominations*, and returning thence into the *Chapter-Houſe*, he there hath made his *Election*, of which the *Black Book* || affords Examples.

P. 248. 249.

VI. The *Manner* of Collecting the *Knights-Companion's Votes*, whether in the *Choir*, or *Chapter*, is, *by going to and fro*, * *from one Side to the other, to demand and redemand their*

* *Lib. N. p. 269.*

Suffra-

Suffrages, *according to the Variety and Order of their Stalls.* The *Officer* that collects, begins at the *youngeſt Knight-Companion*, and ſo proceeds upwards towards the *Eldeſt*, they being ranked in due Order, according to the Seniority of their *Elections*. Each *Knight-Companion* has his own Name prefix'd to thoſe *nine* * Perſons for whom He gives his Vote; and theſe are ranked in *three* ſeveral *Diviſions*, as has been obſerv'd already. He likewiſe, that demands theſe *Suffrages*, given according to the Judgment of each *Knight-Companion* preſent, is appointed, by the Statutes of *Inſtitution*, † to take them in *Writing:* And after the *Scrutinies* began to be entred on the Pages of the *Annals*, it is evident, the *general* Practice has gone along with the Injunction of the *Statutes:* And when there has been an Omiſſion of taking the *Scrutiny* in *Writing*, this ought to be interpreted, not only contrary to the *Law* of the *Order*, ſo enjoyned for a more certain Memorial of the Actions, and more faithful Tranſmiſſion of it to Poſterity, but exceeding prejudicial to Perſons of *Honour* and *Merit*;

* *V. ſup. p.* 189.

† *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 18.

rit; whoſe *Names* would otherwiſe live with great Reputation among the *Candidates* of this illuſtrious *Order*; and of which Honour many deſerving Perſons will be hereafter deprived, if the *Injunction* of the *Statutes* be not obſerved in this Particular.

VII. The *Suffrages* being received from the *Knights-Companions*, the ſame *Officer* preſents the whole Form of the *Nominations* to the *Sovereign* with all due Reverence. If theſe *Votes* were taken in *Chapter*, the Paper wherein Entry was made, hath been uſually forthwith preſented to the *Sovereign*'s Hands, who upon peruſal of it made *Election* and *Choice* before the *Chapter* broke up; of which Practice there are many Inſtances. But if the *Votes* were collected in the *Chappel*, the Paper ſometimes was immediately deliver'd to the *Sovereign*, before He went thence, tho' no *Election* was made until the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* met in *Chapter* the next Morning. At other times, it has not been preſented until *Veſpers* were finiſhed: And laſtly (which has been frequent in uſe of later Times) the *Scrutiny* has not been pre-

preſented to the *Sovereign* till the next Morning, after opening the *Chapter*; and this ſometimes done, by tranſcribing it into a little *Book*, and with all due Reverence offer'd upon the Knee, before * any thing elſe was treated of in the *Chapter*. If the *Sovereign* be abſent, when the *Votes* are collected, the *Officer*, by whom they are taken, is to preſent them into the Hands of the *Sovereign's Deputy* or *Lieutenant*; who thereupon is obliged to deliver them to the *Sovereign*, either that Evening or the next Morning.

* *Lib. R.* *p.* 142.

VIII. THE *Scrutiny* being thus preſented to the *Sovereign*, the *Qualification* of each Perſon to be elected, is next to be conſider'd of, and well weighed by the *Sovereign*: For, as the *Knights Companions* are obliged by the *Statutes* to nominate no other than ſuch as can abide the Teſt of thoſe *Qualifications* there remembred; ſo is there a Standard of *Honour*, provided and ordained for the *Sovereign*, whereby to meaſure the *Extraction*, *Quality*, and *Merit* of the Perſon propoſed to Election; leſt peradventure in leſs circumſpect Times, the Favour of the

Sovereign might become over indulgent, to inferiour or unworthy Persons, who ought here utterly to be rejected, because this Order (as 'tis expres'd in the *Black Book*) *consisting of Goodness and honourable Vertue, does not admit or uphold Unworthiness and Villany.* In the said *Book*, the Qualifications are only said in *general*, to be *Vertue* and *good Report:* But we observe, that these *Generals* have been consider'd in foregoing Times, with great Circumspection, by the *Sovereigns* and their *Lieutenants* before Election; and that the *Magnanimity*, *Fortitude*, *Prudence*, *Generosity*, *Fame*, *Reputation*, and other *Vertues* and *Merits*, whether innate or acquired, of the Person proposed to *Election*, have been by their prudent Inquisition look'd into, and brought to the Rule for Tryal.

HERE then the *second Article* of the *Statutes* both of *Edward* III. and *Henry* VIII. (which we have * before set down at large) falls in to be consider'd; As,

* *V. p.* 46, & 71.

I. THAT no Man ought to be elected, unless *He be a Gentleman born*; which, by *Henry* VIII. Statutes is explain'd,

plain'd, *to be one deſcended of three Deſcents of Nobles*, viz. of *Name* and *Arms*, both of his *Father* and *Mother's* Side; Gentility not being made perfect *or* accompliſhed in the *Perſon* in whom it takes Beginning, but rather compleated by *Succeſſion*; as was obſerv'd among the *Romans*, in beſtowing the *Ring*, one of the *Enſigns* of the *Equeſtrian Order*; the *Grandfather's* Freedom * being alſo enquir'd into, as well as that of the *Father*.

* *Plin. L.* 33.

II. No Perſon is qualify'd for *Election*, unleſs he be a *Knight*; or, (as one of the *Exemplars* expreſſes it) *unleſs girded with the unſtained Girdle of Knighthood*; which intimates the ſingular Regard and Jealouſy the *Law* of this *Order* has of this particular *Qualification*, above the reſt. That the *ſecond Article* is thus to be conſtrued, is evident from that remarkable Inſtance † in the Lord *Roos* (afterwards Earl of *Rutland*) whom K. *Hen.* VIII. after *Election* finding a Miſtake, and re-aſſembling the *Knights-Companions*, forthwith dubb'd him *Knight*, and then proceeded to a new *Election* of the ſame Perſon.

† *Lib. N. p.* 247.

III. They are to be *Knights free* from *Infamy or Reproach*; and to prevent any Miſtake here, King *Henry* VIII's Statutes determine and limit the Points of *Reproach* to *three* only, *viz.*

The firſt *Point* of *Reproach* is, where a *Knight hath been convicted of* Hereſy, *againſt the Catholick Faith, or ſuffer'd any publick Puniſhment for ſuch Offence.* Here we may ſee, *Hereſy* is reckon'd among thoſe Defects, that deprive Men of *Honour*; inaſmuch as bending its Force againſt the *Catholick Church*, it not only renders a Man in the Balance of Honour of no Weight, but more than all other Sins makes him infamous. And therefore, when either by *Tongue*, *Pen* or *Actions*, a Man endeavours to trample under foot the ſacred Law, ſcandalizes Government, ſeduces others, or in like execrable Wickedneſſes diſcovers himſelf, he is judged void of *Conſcience* and *Equity*, and a moſt notorious Deſtroyer of that divine Part of Man, the *Soul*, and conſequently deſerving, not of external Infamy alone (which the Guilt of this Offence juſtly contracts) but other Puniſhments extending to Life.

Another

ANOTHER *Point* of *Reproach* is, *where any Knight hath been arraigned, convicted and attainted of* Treaſon. This Point Queen *Eliz.* was pleas'd to qualify, and, as conceiv'd, for the Sake of ſome particular Perſons, by a Decree in *Chapter* held the *firſt* Year of her Reign, * *viz.* that in caſe any *Perſon* (ſo convicted) was pardoned by the *Sovereign*, and reſtored in Blood, ſuch Perſon being otherwiſe qualified according to the ancient Statutes of the *Order*, ſhou'd be thenceforth accounted *eligible*, and might be choſen a *Companion.*

* *Lib. C. p.* 29.

THE other *Point* of *Reproach* is, where a *Knight Companion hath fled from* Battel, *in which the Sovereign or his Lieutenant, or other Captain (having the King's Authority) were preſent, when Banners were diſplayed, and both Sides proceeded to fight.* By the Laws of King *Edward* the *Confeſſor*, where a Soldier in any Expedition either by Land or Sea, runneth from his *Colours*, his *Life* † and *Eſtate* was made liable to anſwer the Offence. And by our *Statute Law* ſince, in ſeveral Reigns, the ſame is made *Felony* without Be-

† *Lamb. Arch. p.* 147.

nefit of Clergy. But much greater the Danger, and far more diſhonourable, where a *Commander* in *Chief* ſhall herein offend.

Besides theſe *three* Points of *Reproach*; in a MSS. of the *Statutes* in *Engliſh*, which hath before it the whole Preamble to *Hen.* VIII. *Statutes*, and did belong to *Henry Grey* third Marqueſs *Dorſet*, Duke of *Suffolk*, as appears by his Coat of *Arms*, painted in the Beginning of it within a *Garter*, and his *Name* ſubſcribed with his own Hand, under the Coat; we find a *fourth Point* of *Reproach*, added to the *three* abovementioned, in theſe Words, *viz.*

The fourth Point of Reproach is, that if any Knight of the Order from henceforth, by Prodigality or Ryot, wilfully and negligently miſpend, ſell, aliene, or do away his Patrimony or Livelihood, by reaſon whereof he ſhall not be able honourably to maintain himſelf and his Eſtate, in ſuch honourable Manner, as may conſerve the Honour of the ſaid Order, and of himſelf; In this Caſe he

He ſhall be ſummoned by the Uſher of Arms of the Order, called the Black Rod, by Commandment of the Sovereign, his Lieuteuant, or Deputy, to appear before his Majeſty, or his Commiſſioners, and the Knights of the Order, at the next Chapter enſuing, there to be examined before the Sovereign, or his ſaid Commiſſioners, and the Knights and Companions of the ſaid Order, and if he be found in ſuch great Default of Prodigality, inſolent Riot, or wilful Negligence; that then the Sovereign, with the Advice of the Company of the ſaid Order, may deprive and degrade him of the ſaid Order, at the ſaid Chapter, if it be their Pleaſure.

But this Point of *Reproach* is not inſerted into King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*; nevertheleſs the Subſtance thereof appears to have been approved of before: For we find among ſome *Orders* ‖ prepared, in the *Chapters* held at *Windſor*, by the Marqueſs of *Exeter*, and other *Knights-Companions* then preſent, *An.* 8 *Hen.* VIII. ‖ *Lib. N.* p. 204.

one

one of them was ſomething to this Purpoſe.

IX. In Relation to the *Scrutiny*, and the *Sovereign*'s Electing, 'tis farther to be obſerv'd, that a Regard is to be had by *Him* to ſuch *Candidates*, as * have *Moſt Voices*, or whom He conceives likely to contribute moſt to the *Honour* * *of the Order*, and prove moſt *Serviceable to Himſelf*, or moſt *Uſeful to His Crown and Kingdom*. The laſt of theſe *Inducements* is of greateſt Latitude: For thereby the *Sovereign* has Power to reject whomſoever He pleaſes, tho' they exceed in Number of *Voices* or other *Qualifications*, and to elect a Perſon, but once named; which appears full enough in the Caſe of *Caſmire*, the 4th King of *Poland* (*an.* 28 *H.* VI.) who having but the † ſingle Vote of the Lord *Scales*, yet upon Conſideration had by the *Sovereign*, how advantageous he might become to his, and his *Kingdom*'s Intereſt, paſs'd in *Election*. And of later Times (as appears in ſome of the Preambles to the *Commiſſions* for Carrying the *Enſigns &c.* to *Foreign Princes*) the Advantages, which the

* *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 18.

† *Lib. N. f.* 104.

the *Sovereign* has conceiv'd to poſſeſs himſelf of, in the improving, confirming, and eſtabliſhing, of a moſt ſtrict and inviolable *Bond* of *Friendſhip* and *Fair Correſpondency*, between *Him* and *Foreign Princes*, their *Realms* and *Subjects*, have been a main Inducement to *Elect* ſuch into the *Order*. So that upon the whole, 'tis the grand Prerogative of the *Sovereign* of this Noble *Order*, that the Right of *Election* || remains wholly in him, and, what belongs to the *Knights-Companions*, is to *Nominate* the Perſons, nevertheleſs qualify'd as aforeſaid. Whomſoever the *Sovereign* deſigns, appoints, and chooſes, is forthwith admitted: *His* only pronouncing the *Name* of the *Perſon* in *Chapter* being ſufficient: However, tho' this Act of *Election* be thus ſettl'd by the *Law* of the *Order*, yet is the Conſent of the *Knights-Companions* thereunto, frequently entred down among the *Annals*, and ſometimes mention'd in the *Commiſſions* of *Legation* to *Foreign Princes*; which is to be underſtood, as an Honorary Reſpect given them by the *Regiſter*, and ſignifying rather an Ap-

|| *V. E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 18. *Ut ſup. p.* 56.

Applauding or Praiſing the *Sovereign's Choice*, than a neceſſary Circumſtance, contributing to the Ratification of the *Election*, as if defective without it. As to the *Regiſter's* Duty here of Recording the *Nominations*, and *Elections*, and *Manner* of doing it, we have already taken Notice * of it, in the Account given of that *Officer*. What may farther be obſerv'd is, that the *Scrutiny* ought not to be *Viewed* until it be entred; no *Knight-Companion* being allowed to ſee whom the other hath named.

* P. 166, 167, &c.

HAVING thus conſider'd the Manner of *Electing* a *Knight* into this Noble *Order*, I proceed in the next place to ſpeak of the Inveſtiture of a *Knight-Subject*, with the Garter, and George.

AND in Reference to this Ceremony, 'tis to be obſerv'd, that *Garter*, † immediately after the *Sovereign* has ſignify'd his Pleaſure, in Election of the Perſon, is ſent out of the *Chapter* to give him Notice of it; or elſe to carry *Letters* thereof from the *Sovereign* to the Perſon *Elected*; as alſo to conduct *Him* afterwards to the *Sovereign's* Preſence. Upon the *Elect-Knight's*

† *Conſtit. Offic.* C. 4.

Knight's Appearance at *Windſor* in *Chapter*, the *Garter* is firſt buckled about his left Leg, next follows his *Inveſtiture* with the reſt of the *Ornaments* of the *Order*, and laſtly his *Inſtallation*. And thus, in the Caſe of *Henry* Earl of *Cumberland* (*an.* 29. *Hen.* VIII.) was the *Inveſtiture* with the *Garter* deferred, till his Appearance at *Windſor*, where that Ceremony, as alſo his *Inveſtiture*, with the *Habit* and *Collar*, and laſtly his *Inſtallation*, were diſpatch'd at one Time.

If the *Knight-Elect* be near at hand, and ready to enter the *Chapter-Houſe*, for receiving the *Garter* and *George* before the *Chapter* break up; the *Sovereign* then, upon Intimation thereof, ſends forth two of the *Knights-Companions* to meet him, who, after a mutual Salute, conduct *Him* between them to the Preſence of the *Sovereign*; *Garter* going before them, and ſometimes *Black-Rod* with him.

The *Knight-Elect* being thus introduc'd, and bowing himſelf with all Reverence before the *Sovereign*, it was uſual heretofore to make a ſhort Gratulatory Speech, acknowledging the ſingu-

ſingular *Honour* conferr'd on him: After which the Ceremony of *Inveſtiture* with the two principal *Enſigns* of the *Order* begins; *Firſt* with the *Garter*, as the moſt ancient and chiefeſt *Enſign*, and next with the *George*: But the farther *Inveſtiture* with the *Habit*, and other the Ornaments of this *Order*, are to be compleated at the Time of the *Elect-Knight*'s Inſtallation at *Windſor*.

Now the Manner and Order in the aforeſaid *Inveſtiture*, was anciently as followeth; Firſt, the *Elect-Knight* ſet his Left Foot upon a Stool, and then one of the *Knights-Companions*, by the *Sovereign*'s Appointment, as his Subſtitute, buckled the Ennobl'd *Garter* about his left Leg: But of late Times, the *Elect-Knight* kneeled on his Right Knee, whilſt this Ceremony was perform'd; during which, the Words * of *Admonition* or *Signification*, at this Part of the *Inveſtiture*, are to be read.

* *Lib. N.* p. 201.

The Forms of *Admonition*, anciently uſed at the *Inveſtiture* of *Knights-Subjects*, may be ſeen in Mr. *Aſhmole*'s Appendix: † But that which particularly

† *N.* xxxvi.

cularly relates to the Putting on the *Garter*, is entred in King *Henry* VIII's Book of *Statutes*, ‖ and is as followeth. ‖ *V. Sup. p.* 107.

Sir, The Loving Company of the Order *of the* Garter, *hath received you their* Brother *and* Fellow, *and in token of this, they give and preſent you this preſent* Garter, *which God grant that you receive, and wear from henceforth to His Praiſe and Glory, and to the Exaltation and Honour of the ſaid Noble* Order *and yourſelf.*

The Princely *Garter* being in Manner aforeſaid buckled on, and the Words of Signification pronounc'd, the *Elect-Knight* is brought before the *Sovereign*, who puts about his Neck the *George*, pendant at a Sky-colour'd Ribband; at which Part of the Ceremony, the *Admonition* uſed at the Adorning of an *Inſtalled Knight* with the *Collar* of the *Order* (changing only the Word *Collar* for *Ribband*) is pronounced, as follows.

Wear

Wear this Ribband *about thy Neck, adorned with the Image of the Bleſſed Martyr and Soldier of Chriſt, St.* George; *by whoſe Imitation provoked, thou may'ſt ſo overpaſs both proſperous and adverſe Encounters, that having ſtoutly vanquiſh'd thine Enemies, both of Body and Soul, thou may'ſt not only receive the Praiſe of this tranſient Combat, but be crowned with the Palm of eternal Victory.*

As to this Ceremony, ſo great a Reſpect has been had to *Foreign Princes* who receive the *Honour* here, that the *Sovereign* uſually performs the *Inveſtiture* himſelf: Even Queen *Elizabeth* herſelf buckled the *Garter* about the Leg of *John Caſimire*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*; and hung about his Neck a Gold Chain with the *George* at it: And now and then (tho' ſeldom) out of ſpecial Grace and Favour, hath the *Sovereign* done this Honour to a *Knight-Subject*. Sometimes the *Sovereign* hath performed but Part of the Inveſtiture, and commanded the Senior *Knight* to do the reſt.

* *Lib. C. p.* 79.

THE Solemnity of Inveſtiture being compleated, the *Elect-Knight*, recollecting himſelf with all befitting Humility, renders Thanks * to the *Sovereign* for theſe Tokens and Enſigns of Honour, and after, with due Reſpects, ſalutes the *Knights-Companions*, who thereupon reſalute the *Elect-Knight*, and joyfully receive him into their Fellowſhip and Society.

* *Lib. N.* p. 211.

IN caſe two or more *Elect-Knights* receive the Honour of this Inveſtiture at one Time, then ſo ſoon as the Senior hath been inveſted, and his humble Thanks preſented, he paſſes down towards the *Chapter-Houſe Door*, and there ſtands, while the next is in like manner inveſted; which Ceremony being ended, he alſo goes down, and ſtands with the other *Elect-Knight*; and ſo do the reſt in Order (if there be more preſent that attend their Inveſtiture) until the *Chapter* break up.

WHEN a *Knight-Subject*, at the Time of his *Election*, is remote from Court, or beyond Sea, and the *Sovereign* determines to ſend him the two principal *Enſigns* of the *Order*, the Charge of this Employment doth of

* *Constitut. ad Offic. C.* 4.

right belong * to *Garter*; of which there are alſo divers Precedents.

THE *Letters*, heretofore ſent from the *Sovereign* along with theſe *Enſigns* of the *Order* to the *Elect-Knights*, have, for the moſt part, been drawn after the Form of thoſe certifying Election; only inſtead of the laſt Clauſe, which therein requires the *Elect-Knights* Repair to the *Sovereign*, for receiving the *Garter* and *George* from him; in *Theſe* was an Allowance to uſe them, as to their Election appertain.

TOGETHER with the *Letters* ſignifying an *Election*, and the *Enſigns* of the *Order*, it was anciently in Uſe, to ſend the *Book* of *Statutes* under the common Seal of the *Order*, no leſs to a *Knight-Subject*, than (in like caſe) to a *Stranger*; and to the ſame End, *viz.* that he might peruſe and adviſe thereupon, whether he would accept of the Election or not.

IN ancient Time, it was Part of the Ceremony, belonging to the *Inveſtiture* with the *Garter*, of an *Elect-Knight* (whether a *Stranger* or *Knight-Subject*) to give him an Oath, which we

we find called, *The Oath in ſuch Caſes accuſtomed to be taken*, and was to this Effect, that the Knight *ſhould* * *well and faithfully keep and obſerve, ſo far as God ſhould enable him, all that was contained in the Statutes of the* Order. But we find not of late, that the Taking ſuch an Oath, at the Performing this Ceremony, hath been impoſed upon any, but foreign Princes; of which we ſhall ſay ſomething by and by.

* *V. Aſhm. Append. N.* xxi.

THE Charges of *Garter* are borne by the *Sovereign*, as often as he ſends him to any *Elect-Knight-Subject*; either with Letters to ſignify his Election, or the *Garter* and *George*, wherewith to inveſt him; and this is commonly proportion'd, † according to the Length or Shortneſs of the Journey. And beſides the *Sovereign*'s Allowance, *Garter* hath been accuſtomed to receive honourable Gratuities and Rewards from the *Elect-Knight* himſelf, after the Inveſtiture performed; and theſe have uſually been proportioned according to the Eſteem of the Honour he receives, and his particular Inclinations to *Garter*, and the

† *Lib. C. p.* 96.

Service done by him. Having thus conſider'd the *Inveſtiture* of a *Knight-Subject* with the *Garter* and *George*, we ſhall, in the next place, take notice of the *Preparations* made for the Perſonal Inſtallation of a *Knight*. And firſt,

THE *Inſtallation or Inauguration* of a *Knight* of this moſt Noble *Order*, conſiſts in a Conjunction of many Ceremonies, and contains the moſt ſolemn Part of thoſe, whereby ſo great an Honour is conferr'd; indeed that which compleateth all the reſt. And till this great Ceremony be duly and ſolemnly performed, the Perſon *elected* hath not the Honour of being reckon'd among the Number of the *Founders*, but barely paſſes for an *Elect-Knight* and no other. For the expreſs Text is, that * in caſe a *Knight Elect* die before his *Inſtallation*, *He ſhall not be named one of the* Founders. And the Reaſon is there given, foraſmuch as *He hath not had the full Poſſeſſion of his State:* And in this Point do the other Bodies of the *Statutes* agree. Howbeit, as ſoon as the *Ceremonies* of *Inſtallation* are completely finiſhed, the

* *Ed.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 19.

the *Knight* is unqueſtionably veſted in full Poſſeſſion of all the Honours and Privileges belonging to a *Founder* of this moſt Noble *Order*.

EVERY *Knight*, after his *Election*, hath the Compaſs of *One Year* * allowed him by the *Statutes*, for Inſtallation; altho' for ſooner ſpeeding thereof, the *Statutes* do as well appoint him to uſe all convenient Diligence---But if he exceed the Time allow'd, his *Election* is ordained to be *abſolutely null and void*. Nor can any thing hinder, but that the *Sovereign* may then freely proceed to a new Election; unleſs the *Elect-Knight* ſend or produce an Excuſe for ſuch Delay, ſufficient and fit to be accepted by the *Sovereign* or his *Deputy*, and the whole Society: Or that the *Sovereign* himſelf think fit to defer the Ceremony of Inſtallation for ſome longer Time.

* *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 19. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 20.

AS to the *Time* of this *Feaſt* of *Inſtallation*, it hath not been hitherto fixed, but always reſted in the Pleaſure of the *Sovereign* to aſſign a convenient Day: And this hath been obtained, either upon the Suit of the *Knight-Elect*, or ſome other of the *Knights-*

Companions, whoſe Favour and Eſteem with the *Sovereign* was beſt able to prevail; and after the Day is appointed, it may and often has been prorogued, upon ſome extraordinary Occaſion intervening, to a farther and more convenient Time for the *Sovereign*'s Affairs.

As to the *Place* for Inſtallation, *That* has been from the Inſtitution of the *Order*, fix'd, as an eſſential Privilege, only to the *Sovereign*'s free Chappel of St. *George* in the Caſtle of *Windſor*; within whoſe *Choir* ſtand erected the *Sovereign*'s and *Knights-Companion*'s *Stalls*; and under its ſacred Roof their *Banners* and *Achievements* are ſet up, as Monuments of their high Deſervings, and ſo great Honour. For altho' the Celebration of the Grand Feaſt of St. *George*, happen'd to be withdrawn from *Windſor*, by a Decree * paſt 9. *Elizabeth*, nevertheleſs the *Feaſt* of *Inſtallation* was therein excepted, and appointed to be ſolemnized at that Place. And this was again provided for among the *Orders*, 21. of King *James*, *viz.* ‖ *That after an Election made of a Knight of the*

* *Lib. C. p.* 54.

‖ *Lib. R. p.* 15.

the Order, his Installation *ſhould be performed at* Windſor, *according to the ancient Cuſtom and Statutes of the* Order.

When therefore the *Sovereign* has been pleaſed to prefix a certain Day for Inſtallation, ſeveral Things are neceſſarily to be prepared, in order to this great Solemnity, *viz.*

I. A *Commiſſion* to admit and inſtall the *Elect Knight.*

II. *Letters* to each of the Commiſſioners, and the *Elect Knight*, for their Repair to *Windſor.*

III. *Warrants* for the *Sovereign*'s *Livery.*

IV. A *Bill* or *Warrant* for the Removal of *Stalls* and *Achievements.*

N. B. Theſe are to be obtained from the *Sovereign*, under his Sign-Manual, by the Chancellor of the *Order.*

V. The *Knight*'s own Preparations; among which his Achievements are to be got in Readineſs for ſetting up, ſo ſoon as He is inſtalled.

As to the *Commiſſion*, no Elect Knight can be inſtalled, unleſs by the *Sovereign* of the *Order* himſelf, or (being preſent) by ſuch of the *Knights-Companions* whom he ſhall verbally authorize, or (if abſent) by his *Commiſſion* drawn up in Writing, and paſt under the great Seal of the *Order*, directed either to his *Lieutenant*, or *Knights-Commiſſioners*. The particular Powers granted by the *Commiſſions* are theſe, *viz.* to accept and admit the *Knight Elect* into the *Order*, to receive his *Oath*, and to *inſtal* him; and the general Power is, to do and accompliſh every thing which belongs to *his* due Admittance and full Inſtallation, as to the Statutes and laudable Uſages, Rules and Cuſtoms of this *Order* appertaineth.

Besides the *Commiſſion*, it hath been uſual for the *Sovereign* (upon the *Chancellor*'s Motion) to iſſue out *Letters* of *Summons* under his Privy Signet, but of late under the Signet of the *Order*, both to the *Commiſſioners* for Inſtallation, and to the *Elect Knights*. The *Chancellor* likewiſe, in caſe the *Sovereign* affords his Preſence, ſends his Circu-

Circular Letters to the *Knights-Companions*, as alſo to the *Prelate* of the *Order*; He likewiſe writes to the three other *Officers* of the *Order*, and *that*, tho' the Inſtallation be diſpatch'd by *Commiſſioners*. The Conveyance of all which appertains to *Garter*, and are left to his Care and Truſt by the *Conſtitutions* † relating to the *Officers* of the *Order*; whoſe Allowance and Reward upon theſe and ſuch-like Services, will be taken notice of in its due Place. † *Cap.* 4.

As to the third Particular; the *Sovereign's Warrant* is directed to the Maſter of the Great *Wardrobe*, to deliver ſo much *Velvet* for the *Livery* of the *Order*, as will make the *Knight-Elect* a Surcoat and Hood, and as much Sarſenet and Taffaty, as will line them. There is alſo to be provided a *Book*, wherein King *Henry* VIII's *Engliſh Statutes* (the ſame as * above laid down) are written in a fair and legible Hand upon Vellom; having in the Beginning the *Sovereign's* Arms impaled with thoſe of the *Order*, and the proper *Arms* of the *Knight* for whom the *Book* is provided, both fairly limned and * *P.* 71.

and ſurrounded with the *Garter*. This *Book* of *Statutes* is prepared by the *Regiſter* of the *Order*, to whom, for the Writing there is an Allowance made; which generally in the Reigns of King *Edward* VI. Queen *Mary* and Queen *Elizabeth*, was 2 *l.* But at King *James* his Coming to the Crown, it was enlarged to 3 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

As to the fourth Particular; the Order of the *Stalls* in the Choir at *Windſor* is ſet down in ſuch *Warrant* or *Scheme* ſign'd by the *Sovereign*, and are ſo to ſtand at the enſuing Inſtallation; ſo that *Garter* hereby is impowered to remove the *Plates* and *Achievements* of the preſent *Knights-Companions*, that ſo Way be made for the *Elect-Knight* or *Knights*, and to fix the new *Plates* and *Achievements* within and over the *Stalls*, in ſuch Order as they are ranked in the ſaid *Scheme* or *Warrant*.

In reference to this Alteration, *Garter* (ſo ſoon as the *Sovereign's* Pleaſure is known touching an Inſtallation) brings to the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, the Names of the preſent *Knights-Companions*, ranked in the Order they then

then ſit in their *Stalls* (in which the Stalls void are to be ſo noted) to the end he may preſent them to the *Sovereign*; who, upon obſerving the Series wherein they be already placed, may the better conſider and determine how to alter and ſeat both them and the new *Elect-Knights*.

And here 'tis proper to enquire, upon what Ground this Alteration and Removal came to be made, and how it continues now in Practice, ſeeing it was otherwiſe at the Inſtitution of the *Order*: For the *Statutes* then made * and ſince, do ordain, *that if any Earl, Baron, or Knight Batchellor ſhould depart this Life, he that ſucceeded in his Place, of what Condition or State ſoever, ſhould poſſeſs the ſame Stall, which his Predeceſſor held before, without changing.* And it was thus at firſt appointed, *that it might be known, who were the firſt* Founders *of this moſt Noble* Order. And to this Purpoſe Dr. *Heylin* has given us two old *French Tables*, † which he copied from the Originals *then* kept in the Choir of *Windſor*, on each ſide one; containing the ancient Manner of Succeſſion in the *Stalls*

* *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 21. *H.* 8. *St. Art.* 22.

† *Hiſt. of St. George Part.* 3. *C.* 4.

Stalls there. *In theſe* Tables, ſays he, *are comprehended the Names of all the Founders, and ſuch as did ſucceed in their ſeveral* Stalls, *till the Beginning of the Reign of King* Henry VII. *So that howſoever now it be, that he that is elected laſt, ſits in the loweſt Stall; and after, as the Places void, is promoted higher; and that it be permitted unto Kings and Sovereign Princes, and their Children, to take Precedency, not according to their Continuance of the* Order, *but their Dignities; yet at the firſt it was not ſo. The* Founder's *Purpoſe was, they ſhould all be* Fellows: *And therefore if a crowned King came in the room of a Knight Batchellor, he ſucceeded alſo in his Stall, as did Knights Batchellors in the Stalls of ſuch Kings and Princes whom they ſucceeded.* This Law of Succeſſion appears to have been kept and obſerved, even unto King *Henry* VIII's Reign, when it received ſome Alteration in this Particular.

But we are here to note, that by the ſame *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, and thoſe of *Henry* VIII. there follows an Exception, as to the *Stall* belonging

to

to the Prince of Wales. This *Stall* is the first on the Left Hand, at the Entrance into the *Choir* of St. *George's Chappel* at *Windsor*, and wherein *Edward* the Black Prince was installed; from this *Stall* does the whole Range of *Stalls* on the same Side take their Denomination, and to which the Prince of Wales, as soon as He is elected into the *Order*, hath a due Title.

But tho' this Stall *de jure* belongs to the Prince of Wales; nevertheless heretofore when the *Sovereign* had no Heir, then was *it* (for the present) disposed of to some other Knight, who received the Honour of Installation therein; otherwise a Defect in the full Number of *Knights-Companions* wou'd have ensued. The first that obtained that Honour (besides *Princes* of *Wales*) was *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster* (*Richard* II. having no Issue, neither then nor afterwards) who was *Remov'd* from the *seventh* Stall on the same Side. But the first *Knight-Companion* that happen'd to be *installed* in *it*, was Sir *Phil. la Vache*; which fell to Him by the *then* Law of the *Order*, being

being elected into the room of the ſaid Duke of *Lancaſter*, who died poſſeſs'd thereof. Howbeit ſhortly after (ſuch was the Change of Times) K. *H.* IV. coming to the Crown, and his eldeſt Son being created Prince of Wales, laid then Claim to *this* Stall by vertue of the aforeſaid Statute, and had it ſurrendred to him. Nevertheleſs, that the *former Poſſeſſor* might ſuffer as little Diminution in the Honour of his Seſſion as might be, He was removed no lower than to the *Stall*, which King *Henry* IV. lately held when Earl of *Derby*, *viz.* the third on the *Sovereign*'s Side, and had now relinquiſhed for the *Sovereign*'s Royal Stall. Upon the Death of King *Henry* IV. and Removal of King *Henry* V. from the Prince's Stall to the *Sovereign*'s Seat, Sir *John Dabriehcourt* (elected *Ann.* 1 *Hen.* V.) was inſtalled therein; and He dying poſſeſs'd thereof, and the Sovereign yet unmarried, the Emperor *Sigiſmond* ſucceeded Sir *John* in the ſaid Prince's Stall. He dying, *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, afterwards Emperor (there being hitherto no Prince born) was *elected* in his room: But this Emperor

peror was never inſtalled, and thereupon during his Life (near 20 Years after his Election) the Prince's Stall was not otherwiſe diſpoſed of, but remained vacant. But ſome few Years before King *Henry* VI. died, he had a Son born; in regard to which, tho' the Emperor *Frederick* was elected into the *Order* upon the Death of *Albert*, yet was the ſaid Stall reſerved for the Prince (but He never poſſeſs'd it) and the Emperor (*Ann.* 37. *Hen.* 6.) was inſtalled by Proxy in the Duke of *Somerſet*'s Stall, then lately deceaſed. In King *Edward* IV's Reign, we find, the Right in *this* Stall returned again to *Edward* Prince of Wales, his eldeſt Son; and in King *Henry* VII's Reign, to Prince *Arthur*; but upon his Death, *Maximilian* Son of *Frederick* King of the *Romans*, and after Emperor, ſat *therein:* So alſo did the Emperor *Charles* V. (his Grandchild) in regard that as yet, there was no Son born to the *Sovereign*. But Prince *Edward* being born, while *this* Stall was poſſeſs'd by *Charles* V. it happen'd alſo that the King of *Scots* died; which cauſed King *Henry* VIII. to reſerve his Stall (the

(the third on the *Sovereign*'s Side) for the *Prince*; altho he never had Poſſeſſion of it, nor was ever elected into the *Order*; yet we find *Him* once regiſtred † in a *Scrutiny*. From this Time to the 8th Year of King *James*, there was no *Prince* of *Wales*; which *King*, finding the *Prince*'s Stall void at his Entrance upon the *Engliſh* Throne, did, in a *Chapter* held 1. of his Reign, advance the *French* King *Henry* IV. from the ſecond Stall on the *Sovereign*'s Side into it; and appointed Prince *Henry* to be inſtalled in that *King*'s void Seat; where he remained till 3. of K. *James*; when *Chriſtierne* IV. King of *Denmark* came to be inſtalled by his Proxy; to make Way for whom, the *Prince* (tho' his Senior both by Election and Inſtallation) was removed yet lower, *viz.* to the ſecond Stall on the *Prince*'s Side, and the ſaid *King* inſtalled in the Seat, which *Prince Henry* had to that Time poſſeſt. And yet, *an.* 9. *Jac.* R. upon the Death of the foreſaid *French* King, not the *Prince* (as was his Right, ſince now *He* was created Prince of Wales) but the ſaid King

† *Lib. N. p.* 281.

King of *Denmark* was tranſlated to the *Prince*'s vacant Stall; hereupon Prince *Henry* was returned again to the ſecond Stall on the *Sovereign*'s Side, which He enjoyed while He lived; and upon his Death *Prince Charles* was removed into it, *Ann.* 11. *Jac.* R. and there reſted all King *James* his Reign. In like Manner, when King *Charles* II. came to be inſtalled, the *then Sovereign* finding him prevented for aſſuming the *Prince's* Stall (the foreſaid King of *Denmark* yet living) aſſigned to *Him* the ſecond Stall on the *Sovereign*'s Side, wherein himſelf ſat while Prince of *Wales*.--- But to proceed.

KING *Henry* VIII. thinking it requiſite for the *Sovereigns* of this moſt Noble *Order*, to be impowered by a general Law, to do that at Pleaſure, which the former *Sovereigns* did not, but by the Power of particular Acts or Orders in *Chapter*; after He had confirmed the ancient * Law of ſucceeding in the Stall of the immediate Predeceſſor, not to be changed without the *Sovereign*'s Licenſe (nevertheleſs excepting *Strangers*) He in the next ſucceeding *Article* eſtabliſhed this

* *V. ſupra. p.* 103.

Privilege upon himſelf and Succeſſors, *viz. that if there was any Place or Stall void, the* Sovereign *at his own Pleaſure might advance and tranſlate any* Knight *of the* Society *into the void Stall, ſo that it was higher than that wherein He ſat before.* This in Effect did vacate the ancient Law of ſucceeding in Stalls by Him ſeemingly confirm'd to *Knights Subjects*; for afterwards Tranſlations preceding to Inſtallations became ſo frequent, that the Right an *Elect Knight* had to his Predeceſſor's Stall was ſeldom enjoyed. Howbeit, hereby He ſettled a Power to gratify and oblige ſuch of the *Knights-Companions* as ſhould be thought worthy the Honour of advancing, without Recourſe had to a *Chapter* for a ſpecial and particular Allowance: And from hence the *Cuſtom began*, to iſſue out *Warrants* under the *Sovereign*'s Sign-Manual for the Tranſlation of *Stalls*, ſome convenient time before the Day of Inſtallation approached; and conſequently the Alteration and Removal of ſuch of the *Knights-Companions* Helms, Creſts, Banners, and Plates, who ſhou'd receive

ceive the Honour of a higher Place; their Achievements being, by vertue of ſuch *Warrants*, ſet up over the Stalls, to which they were advanced, there to remain during the time their Owners continued therein.

BESIDE the Power already menti-on'd, of *the Sovereign's* tranſlating *Stalls*, when a Vacancy happen'd, King *Henry* VIII. farther added this larger Prerogative, *viz. that* * *the* Sovereign *once in his Life, might, if it pleas'd Him, make a general Tranſlation of* all *the Stalls at his Pleaſure, except of* Emperors, Kings, Princes *and* Dukes. *In which Tranſlation, the long Continuance in the* Order, *and the Praiſes, Worthineſs and Merits of the* Knights-Companions *were to be conſidered and remembred.* But this Branch of the *Sovereign's* Prerogative in the *Order*, was never yet made uſe of, as we can find (tho' a Tranſlation *An.* 27. *H.* VIII. came ſomething near it) perhaps, leſt it might raiſe too great Animoſities among the *Knights-Subjects*; foraſmuch as that of tranſlating only (when there happen'd a Vacancy) begot great Emulations, which at length intro-

* *V. ſupra*, p. 103.

duced an Alteration. And therefore in the 6th of Queen *Elizabeth* a new *Law* was introduced, being framed (as was conceived) upon a more equal Ground, and to avoid, as much as might be, the Danger of Emulation, *viz. that* * *all Knights, who for the future were admitted into the Society of the* Order, *ſhou'd take, and be inſtalled in, the* loweſt Stall, *according to the Courſe and Seniority of their Election; except only Stranger Kings and Princes.* And thus, when a *Knight-Subject* elect was to be inſtalled (He taking the loweſt Stall) all the *Knights-Companions* between Him and the vacant Stall, were removed higher, to the End ſuch Vacancy might be ſupplied. But tho' this Manner and Order in Removals is now become a Thing of Courſe, and the Method eaſy; yet may it not be done, or the Achievements, Banners or Plates removed, unleſs the *Sovereign* ſign a Warrant as formerly; wherein they are orderly ranked, to juſtify *Garter* for ſo doing.

* *Lib. C. p.* 49.

In the 14th of *Charles* II. the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions*, aſ-

ſembled

ſembled in *Chapter*, ordered, * *that thenceforward all* Princes Strangers, *of what Condition ſoever, ſhou'd have Precedence among themſelves, according to the Seniority of their Elections and Inſtallations.* Nevertheleſs, ſome Years after, *viz.* 1669, upon due Conſideration had of the Law made by King *Henry* VIII. for placing of *Strangers*; as alſo *that* of Queen *Elizabeth* for *Knights-Subjects*; and to remove all *Orders* made in Alteration thereof; the *Sovereign* in *Chapter*, by the Advice and Conſent of the moſt noble *Companions* preſent, was pleaſed to ordain and declare,

* *Lib Carol. p.* 43.

I. *That* || *the* Princes *of* Wales, *and ſuch* Emperors *and* Kings, *that ſhou'd be of the* Order, *ſhould be placed in the neareſt Stalls to that of the* Sovereign, *according to their Elections and Inſtallations.*

|| *Lib. Carol. p.* 72.

II. *That all other* Sovereign Princes, *and* Princes *of the* Blood, *ſhould be placed in the Stalls next unto* Kings *according to their Seniority in the* Order.

III. *That all other his Majeſty's* Subjects *and* Strangers *not of the Dignity abovemention'd, ſhould be inſtalled in the loweſt Stalls, according to their Antiquity in the* Order, *and the ancient Practice.*

THUS ſtands the Law for Settlement of *Stalls* at this Day. And whereas the Stall, commonly call'd the Prince's Stall, was and had been long void, the *Sovereign*, by the Advice of the moſt noble *Companions*, in the ſame *Chapter* was pleaſed to order, * *that the then King of* Sweden *ſhou'd by his Proxy be placed in that Stall, and his Achievements hung up thereon accordingly, in convenient Time.* All which being done, as this Order directed, the Stalls at the Feaſt of St. *George* celebrated *An.* 23. *Car.* II. were order'd in the following Manner.

* *Ib.* p. 73.

1. The *Sovereign.*	1. The King of *Sweden.*
2. King of *Denmark.*	2. Duke of *York.*
3. Prince El. *Palatine.*	3. Prince *Rupert.*

4. Prince

4. Prince of *Orange.*	4. Prince El. of *Brandenburgh.*
5. Prince El. of *Saxony.*	5. Duke of *Ormond.*
6. Duke of *Buckingham.*	6. Duke of *Newcaſtle.*
7. Earl of *Briſtol.*	7. Prince of *Tarente.*
8. Count *Marſhin.*	8. Earl of *Sandwich.*
9. Earl of *Oxford.*	9 Duke of *Richmond.*
10. Earl of *Strafford.*	10. Duke of *Monmouth.*
11. Duke of *Albemarle.*	11. Void.
12. Void.	12. Void.
13. Void.	13. Void.

HAVING thus laid down the ancient Law of *Succeſſion* into void Stalls, and of *Tranſlation* from one Stall to another, both while ſuch Removals were at the *Sovereign*'s Pleaſure, and after, when they became confin'd to the regular Courſe now obſerv'd; and having alſo diſcours'd concerning thoſe Things, which are to be prepared for the Inſtallation of a *Knight-*

Subject on the *Sovereign*'s part, and for which His *Warrants* and *Letters* iſſue forth, as is before obſerved: We come now to conſider what is farther to be prepared for the *Knight-Elect*, at his *own Charge*, againſt the Day of this great Solemnity; and they are chiefly thoſe which follow.

1. A *Mantle* or upper Robe, with its Appurtenances.
2. A *Collar* of the Garter and Great *George*.
3. A *Cap* of black Velvet adorn'd with Plumes.
4. An *Helm*, *Creſt*, *Mantlings* and *Sword*.
5. A *Banner* of his Arms.
6. A *Plate* of his Arms and Style.
7. A *Cuſhion*, to carry his Robes and Collar upon.
8. *Lodging Scutcheons*.

We do not find, that the *Mantle* of the *Order* was anciently beſtowed by the *Sovereign* upon *Knights-Subjects*, as was the *Kirtle* or *Surcoat*: But it appears, that the *Sovereign* always beſtow'd the *Mantle*, with the reſt of the

the Habit, on *Strangers*, after he had elected any of them into the Society of the *Order*. Howbeit, of late Times the *Sovereign*, as an eſpecial Mark of Favour, hath been pleaſed now and then to give a *Knight-Subject* the *Mantle* alſo; of which there are Inſtances in the ſeveral Reigns of King *James* I. King *Charles* I. and King *Charles* II.

But as the *Elect-Knight* otherwiſe provides the *Mantle* at his own Charge, ſo Directions may be had, as to the Materials, in what we have ſaid *above, concerning the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order*. * P. 121, 122, &c.

When the *Sovereign* is pleas'd to beſtow the *Mantle*, He then likewiſe beſtows the *Collar* with the *Great George*; a Warrant iſſuing, for that Purpoſe, to the *Maſter* of the *Jewel-Houſe*.

All the *Achievements*, ſuch as the *Helm* and *Creſt* with *Mantlings* thereunto belonging, alſo *Sword* and *Girdle*, are to be got in Readineſs by the Care and Direction of *Garter*, but at the *Elect-Knight*'s Coſt; all which are

to

to be ſet over his Stall, as ſoon as his Inſtallation Fees are paid.

THE *Helms* uſed for this Purpoſe, are made of Steel, large and fair, and of a more than ordinary Proportion: They are likewiſe, for the moſt part, of two Sorts; the one appointed for *Sovereign Princes*, and framed open, with large Bails or Bars; the other for *Knights-Subjects*, whoſe *Vizors* are made cloſe. About King *Henry* VIII's Reign, the *Knights-Subject's Helms* were parcel gilt with fine Gold in Oil, wrought with *Rabeskies* and and other Works, and burniſh'd with fine Gold. But in Queen *Elizabeth's* Reign and ſince, it hath been the Cuſtom to gild their *Helms* all over, placing St. *George's Arms* in the middle before the *Vizors*.

THE *Mantlings*, that hang down on either Side of the *Helm*, which, with the *Wreath*, are ſometimes called *Appendixes*, are all of *Tiſſue* or Cloth of *Gold*, and heretofore lined with *Sarcenet*: But in Queen *Mary's* Reign, they began to make uſe of white *Sattin*. At the Bottom of theſe *Mantlings* hang a Pair of Gilt *Knobs*, burniſh'd

burniſh'd with Gold, from which iſſue *Taſſels* of either Gold or Silver (according as the Metal is in the *Knight*'s Coat Armour) mixed with Silk of the chief Colour in his *Arms*. The *Wreath*, which is placed on the *Helm* and *Mantlings*, is of corded Silks, of the *Knight*'s Colours, which was heretofore made of *Sarcenet*, but now of Taffaty.

THE *Creſt* of the *Knight* is placed either upon theſe *Wreaths*, or iſſuant out of a Crown, or Ducal Cap; turned up with Ermin; and of what Kind ſoever the Creſt is, the ſame is neatly carved in *Wood*; and either gilt or wrought in its proper Colours in Oil.

DIRECTLY before the *Helm*, an Arming *Sword* hangs down, the *Pomel*, *Croſs*, and *Chape* are gilt; the *Scabbard* is made of the ſame Tiſſue or Cloth of Gold, as are the *Mantlings*, and ſo is the *Girdle* thereunto belonging: But the *Buckles* and *Pendants* are of Copper gilt.

AS to the *Banner*; tho' the Cuſtom of ſetting up the *Helm*, *Creſt*, and *Sword*, over the *Knight*'s Stall, appears

pears to be as ancient as the Inſtitution of the *Order*; yet at what Time their *Banners* were firſt hung up, is not ſo evident; the firſt Time we find them mention'd, is * *an.* 2. *Hen.* VI. The Faſhion of the *Sovereign*'s and all the *Knights-Companion*'s *Banners* are ſquare; the Arms wrought or beaten upon double Sarcenet, or rich Taffaty, with fine Gold and Colours; together with a *Fringe* made of Gold or Silver and Silk, of the Colours in the *Wreath*; and the right Marſhalling theſe *Arms* belongs to *Garter*. Theſe *Banners* are fixed to the End of long *Staves*, painted in Oil, formerly with the Colours of the *Wreath*, but now *Red*: And placed over the reſpective Helms and Creſts.

* *Lib. N.* p. 76.

THERE is alſo to be provided a *Copper Plate* gilt, whereon the *Knight-Elect*'s *Arms* and *Quarterings* are engraved and enamel'd in Colours within a *Garter*, with his *Helm*, *Creſt*, and *Supporters*; and underneath, his Style and Titles of Honour; which Plate is to be fixed on the Back of the *Knight-Elect*'s Stall; and the Providing of, and Seeing *it* done, is uſually Part of *Garter*'s Care.

THERE

THERE is alſo a Velvet *Cuſhion* to be provided; whereon to carry the *Knight-Elect*'s *Mantle*, *Collar*, *Hood*, and *Book* of *Statutes*, before him, in the Proceeding to the *Choir*, at his Inſtallation. And laſtly, there has been commonly provided a convenient Number of *Lodging Scutcheons*, of the *Elect-Knight*'s Arms, invironed with a *Garter*, with his Style and Titles underneath; to be diſtributed at the Inns, in the *Knight*'s Paſſage to, and at *Windſor*: And theſe alſo *Garter* gets in readineſs.

THE *Garter*'s Charges have ſometimes been caſt up, and the Account ſtated and pay'd off beforehand: By which means, he was the better enabled to furniſh out the Particulars abovemention'd. There are ſome other Things to be taken care of by the *Knight-Elect*, as his own Apparel, the Number of his Attendants and Servants, with their Cloaths and Liveries, his Coach and Saddle Horſes, *&c.* all which have uſually been the richeſt or beſt that could be made or gotten. With theſe, the Proviſion for *Dyet* at *Windſor* (if the Feaſt be kept

kept at the *Elect-Knight's* Charge and Expence) is to be conſider'd of: And to that End, for the moſt part, ſome one of the *Clerks* of the *Sovereign's* Kitchin is to be conſulted, who commonly undertakes the Management of that Affair. We proceed now, in conſidering the perſonal Inſtallation of a *Knight-Subject.*

In former Times, the *Knights-Elect* frequently took their Journey from *London* to their Inſtallation at *Windſor*, in the Nature of a ſolemn and ſtately *Cavalcade*; and this Proceeding on Horſeback was generally ſet forth with exceeding Pomp; and ſuitable thereto was the *Feaſt*, which had in it all Manner of Magnificence and Plenty, as well of Proviſion, as all other Things that could add Glory thereunto: And in which the *Elect-Knights* (when kept at their Charge) ſtrove not only to exceed their Predeceſſors, but one another: Inſomuch that *Embaſſadors* and *Strangers* eſteemed it one of the goodlieſt Sights, that was to be ſeen in *Chriſtendom.* But the Fate of this Solemnity, much like that of the Sun, (whoſe Luſtre at ſuch Times

it

it ſtrove to outſhine) had ſometimes its ſhort intermitting Clouds, at others, long Nights, and the Glory thereof appeared but now and then, when the Pleaſure of the *Sovereign* grew auſpicious, or the Honour of the *Order* became placed upon more generous Spirits.

As to the particular Ceremonies of *Inſtallation*; ſince neither the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, nor of King *Henry* V. afford us a *Formulary* (tho' each of them contain ſome Part of thoſe Ceremonies, obſerved at the Inſtallation of *Strangers* by Proxy) yet *thoſe* made by King *Henry* VIII. do exhibit (in ſhort) the Order and Method thereof; we ſhall make uſe of the ſame, as we paſs along, and regularly place thoſe Directions under their proper Heads. We muſt farther obſerve, that if the *Inſtallation* be appointed together with the *Feaſt* of St. *George*, then either the *Sovereign* (and conſequently the *Knights-Companions*) or elſe his *Lieutenant* and *Aſſiſtants* are preſent: But if at any other Time of the Year, then it paſſeth by *Commiſſioners* only: And where we mention the *Sovereign*, and his

his *Lieutenant*, and *Commiſſioners* together, there the Caſe or Rule inſerted, will ſuit with every of them.

After ſuch Time then as the *Sovereign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commiſſioners*) have prefixed an Hour, wherein to begin the *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-Houſe*, in order to the Inſtallation of the *Elect-Knight* or *Knights* (which Ceremony for the moſt part hath been perform'd and diſpatch'd on the *Evening* of their Arrival at *Windſor*, but ſometimes the next Morning) all the *Knights-Companions* and *Elect-Knights*, the *Officers* of the *Order* and of *Arms*, the *Prebendaries* of the *College* and *Alms-Knights*, are to give their Attendance, *viz.* the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order*, on the *Sovereign* in his inward Lodgings; the *Elect-Knights* and *Officers* of *Arms* in the Preſence Chamber; the *Prebendaries* and *Alms-Knights* in the great Chamber; where they wait the *Sovereign*'s Coming forth.

The Proceedings upon this ſolemn Occaſion, have been generally order'd on Foot: Nevertheleſs, upon ſome extraordinary Account, they have

have been marſhalled and diſpos'd on Horſeback in manner of a *Cavalcade*; of which there are ſeveral * Inſtances. And when the Proceeding was thus order'd on Horſeback, at the Beginning of the Feaſt, it continued the ſame throughout at the uſual Times, ſo often as the *Sovereign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commiſſioners*) went to the *Chapter-Houſe* or *Chappel*; and all the Returns were marſhalled in the like Order as the Settings forth.

* *V. Aſhm. p.* 345.

THE *Servants* and *Attendants* belonging to the *Knight-Elect*, if they be taken into the Proceeding, paſs on *firſt*, Two and Two in a Rank, according to their Quality; thoſe of the meaneſt Condition foremoſt.

NEXT the *Alms-Knights* in their Habits and uſual Order.

THEN follows the *Verger* of the *College*.

THEN the *Prebendaries* or *Canons*.

THEN the *Purſuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* of *Arms*.

THEN the *Knight-Subject-Elect*, unleſs the *Proctor* of an abſent *Knight-Subject* paſs at the ſame Time in this Proceeding; whoſe Place is immedi-

ately next after the *Provincial Kings*: And if it ſo happen, that the *Proctor* to a *Stranger Prince* be then alſo preſent, *He* is to proceed between the *Knight-Subject*'s *Proctor* and the *Knight Subject-Elect*.

WHERE two or more *Elect-Knights* proceed to their Inſtallation at the ſame Time, they take Place according to the Seniority of their Election; proceeding Two and Two together: And if the Number be odd, the *Junior Elect-Knight* paſſeth alone.

THE *Elect-Knight* heretofore paſſed in his ordinary Apparel, wearing over it long ſince a ſhort Gown, afterwards a Cloak, and of later Times a Coat; as appears by ſeveral Inſtances * on Record. But this was before any peculiar *Under Habit* was appointed to the *Knights-Companions*; for now there being a Cloth of Silver Doublet, and Trunk-Hoſe, eſtabliſh'd to be worn at the Feaſts of *Inſtallation* and of St. *George*, the *Elect-Knight* proceeds in this Habit.

* *V. Aſhm. p.* 346.

IN this Proceeding to the *Chapter-Houſe*, the *Elect-Knight* wears only the *Garter* about his Leg, and the

George

George and *Ribband* wherewith he was inveſted, either about his Neck, or (as of late) drawn under his Right Arm.

THE Earl of *Rutland* with his Fellow *Elect-Knights* (*an.* 14. K. *James*) proceeded bareheaded, as alſo the Duke of *Lenox* (*an.* 9. *Car.* I.) and ſo did the Duke of *Albemarle* (*an.* 23. *Car.* II.)

THE *Elect-Knight* doth not always go in this *Proceeding*; but ſometimes ſtays at his Lodgings in the Caſtle, or elſe at ſome other convenient Place near unto the *Chapter-Houſe*, either one of the *Canon*'s Houſes, or the Eaſt Iſle of the *Chappel*, behind the Altar, till he be ſent for into the *Chapter-Houſe*, to receive Inveſtiture with the *Surcoat*.

IF the *Sovereign* be preſent at the *Inſtallation*, the *Knights-Companions* proceed next after the *Knights-Elect* (or the *Proctor* to a Stranger *Prince*) according to the Order of their *Stalls*; but if the *Sovereign*'s *Lieutenant*, then his *Aſſiſtants* go in their Place: And if the Inſtallation be diſpatch'd by *Commiſſioners*, then the three inferiour

* *Regiſter. Garter. Black Rod.* * *Officers* of the *Order*, immediately follow the *Knight Elect*, and proceed next before the *Commiſſioners* (becauſe they have no *Aſſiſtants* appointed them to paſs between, as hath the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) Once indeed (and but once) *viz. an.* 16 *Eliz.* at the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Derby*, we find the ſaid *Officers* did precede the *Elect-Knights*; but this was thro' Miſtake.

† *V. Lib. R. p.* 48. The Place and Order of theſe three *Officers* having formerly been debated, it was at length concluded; † that from the *Caſtle* to the *Chappel* they ſhould proceed before the *Commiſſioners*, but in returning from the *Chappel* to the *Caſtle* they ſhould follow. However, this Determination was grounded but upon *Conjecture*, as the *Annals* note; and how fit ſoever it was then thought, yet if well conſider'd, will appear not conſonant to Precedents and Practice, both before and ſince ſuch Determination; as alſo to the uſual Rule, where all Returns are marſhalled anſwerably to their Settings forth, unleſs the Condition of any Perſon in the Proceeding be in the mean Time changed.

It

It may perhaps be reply'd, that the Ground of this Reſolution, of following the *Commiſſioners* in their Return, was, becauſe the Authority, wherewith they were impower'd, ſeemed to ceaſe as ſoon as the *Knight* was inſtalled, and conſequently the Attendance, which that Authority exacted from the *Officers*, then ceaſed alſo: But if ſo, what needed any Proceeding back at all, but that the *Commiſſioners* ſhould have put off their Habits in the *Chapter-Houſe*, and paſs thence privately to their Lodgings? But to proceed.

When Inſtallations paſs by *Commiſſioners* only, theſe three *Officers* abovemention'd wear their *Robes*, but bear not the *Enſigns* of their Offices in the Proceeding. But if the *Sovereign* himſelf be preſent, or that he conſtitute a *Lieutenant*, the *Regiſter* then carries the *Red Book*, and *Garter* and the *Black Rod* bear each of them their *Rods*. And note alſo, that in every Proceeding to Inſtallation by a *Lieutenant* or *Commiſſioners*, *Garter* carries the *Sovereign*'s Commiſſion in his Hand to the *Chapter-Houſe* before them. And thus we are arrived at

the Place of the *Sovereign* (his *Lieutenant*, or *Commiſſioners*) which is in the Rear, and with which we ſhall cloſe the ordinary Proceeding.

AFTER the *Lieutenant*'s Entrance into the *Chapter-Houſe*, and opening of the *Chapter*, *Garter* (with three Reverences) preſents firſt the *Commiſſion* of *Lieutenancy* to hold the Feaſt; next, that of Inſtallation, to the *Lieutenant* (or if the Inſtallation paſs by *Commiſſioners*, then only the Commiſſion of Inſtallation to the *Senior Commiſſioner*) which being received, he delivers it to the *Regiſter* of the *Order*, who forthwith reads it: For to him this Duty appertains, as is recorded in the *Black Book* * of the *Order*.

* P. 181.

WHEN the *Regiſter* has read the *Commiſſions*, he returns them to the *Lieutenant* (or *Commiſſioners*) and he again to the Cuſtody of *Garter*.

IF the *Sovereign* be preſent, the *Chancellor* acquaints him, that the *Knights-Elect* are without; otherwiſe the *Lieutenant* and *Aſſiſtants* (or *Commiſſioners*) conſult together for ſome ſhort Space, touching the Manner of calling in, and receiving the *Elect-Knight*;

Knight; which being concluded on, they immediately ſend out for him; and *Garter* † is uſually employed in this Service, who with all due Reſpect invites and conducts him to the *Chapter-Houſe* Door.

† *Lib. N. p.* 277.

When there are two or more *Elect-Knights* that wait without in the Eaſt Iſle, expecting to be called in; *Garter* firſt conducts the *Senior* by Election, to the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, and afterwards the next, and ſo the reſt in like Order.

As ſoon as *Garter* has conducted the *Elect-Knight* to the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, two of the *Commiſſioners* (when the Inſtallation is performed by *Commiſſioners*) or two of the *Knights Aſſiſtants* (when by the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*) or two of the Senior *Knights-Companions* (if the *Sovereign* himſelf be preſent) receive him without; immediately conducting him up to the *Sovereign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commiſſioners*) unto whom he maketh humble Reverence; and after ſome ſhort Congratulation, the *Lieutenant* (or Senior *Commiſſioners*) in a ſhort Speech makes known to him the Ef-

fect of his *Commiſſion*, and declares the *Sovereign*'s Bounty and ready Kindneſs towards him, for a *full* Admittance into this moſt honourable *Society*; which the *Elect-Knight* moſt humbly and gratefully acknowledgeth and accepts.

THE Compliments at receiving the *Elect-Knight* into the *Chapter-Houſe* being over, he diſrobes himſelf of his upper Garment,* and then the *Surcoat* or *Kirtle* is taken from the Table (where it and the reſt of the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order* are decently and ſeparately laid in readineſs before-hand) and he *inveſted* therewith; at the doing of which, theſe Words of *Admonition* are to be read or ſpoken, *viz.*

* *Lib. N. p.* 274.

Take this Robe *of* Purple *to the Encreaſe of your Honour, and in Token or Sign of the moſt Honourable* Order *you have received; wherewith you being defended, may be bold not only ſtrongly to fight, but alſo to offer yourſelf to ſhed your Blood for* Chriſt's Faith, *the Liberties of the Church, and the juſt and neceſ-*

neceſſary Defence of them that be oppreſſed and needy.

AFTER this, his *Sword* is cloſe girt about him, over his *Surcoat*, by the *Commiſſioners* (or the *Aſſiſtants* to the *Lieutenant*, or ſome of the *Knights-Companions*) and ſometimes (in way of Aſſiſtance) *Garter* hath put on the *Elect-Knights Surcoat*, girt his *Sword* about him, and laid his *Hood* over his Shoulder: And as ſoon as this Ceremony is diſpatched, the *Sovereign*, or his *Lieutenant*, proceed into the *Choir*, leaving the *Elect-Knight* behind them.

THE *Hood* was heretofore put on in the *Chapter-Houſe* (as K. *Hen.* VIII's Statutes * appoint) after the *Elect-Knight* has been inveſted with his *Surcoat*, and before He proceeded to his *Inſtallation*: But of late, becauſe *it* muſt be taken off again in the *Choir*, and laid aſide, to the end the *Mantle* may be put on, and after that, laid on the Shoulder a ſecond time (over the *Mantle*) it hath been conceived a Sort of Diminution in the Inveſtiture, to take off any Part of the *Habit* before

* *Art.* 21.

fore the whole Inveſtiture be compleated. Whereupon at the beginning of K. *James* I.'s Reign, it was thought more convenient, that the *Hood* ſhould be carried upon the *Cuſhion* by *Garter* into the Choir, together with the *Mantle* and *Collar*, and not be put on till after the Inveſtiture with the *Mantle*; and tho' anciently it was laid over the *left* Shoulder of the *Elect-Knight*, and ſo worn upon all Occaſions, yet (*Ann.* 2 and 3 of *Phil.* and *Mar.*) the wearing thereof being taken notice of, to obſcure the *Scutcheon* of St. *George* embroidered on the *ſame* Shoulder of the *Mantle*, it was therefore decreed in a *Chapter* held the foreſaid Year, *that thenceforth the* Knights-Companions *ſhou'd wear their* Hoods *on the* Right Shoulders, *to the end the* Scutcheon *might be the better ſeen and appear.* This Matter was again debated (*Ann.* 12. *Jac. R.*) but the Cuſtom of wearing theſe *Hoods* on the *Right* Shoulder was thought fit to be continued, purſuant to the former Decree; and ſo the Cuſtom now ſtands.

To

To great *Princes-Strangers*, there is a Liberty given by King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, to receive (if they pleaſe) their *Habit* wholly within the *Chapter-Houſe*, and before they enter their *Stalls*: And this appears to have been the Cuſtom in Times paſt. But in the 14th of Queen *Elizabeth* and 10th of King *James*, it was otherwiſe; the *Mantle*, *Hood*, and *Collar*, being received in the *Stalls*, after the Oath taken.

The *Elect-Knight* habited as before, forthwith paſſeth from the *Chapter-Houſe* along the *North* Iſle, and ſo in at the *Weſt* Door of the *Choir*, in ſolemn Order: But *his* Place in this *Proceeding* is changed; for here *He* is led between two of the *Knights-Companions*. For this, ſee Precedents in the *Black Book*.* And altho' the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, and thoſe made by King *Henry* V. are ſilent in the Order of this Proceeding; yet for an *Elect-Knight* to be led to his *Stall*, between two other of the *Knights-Companions*, is no modern Ceremony; it having been done in *Henry* VI's Reign: However, King *Henry* VIII's Statutes † are very

* P. 99.

† *Art.* 21.

very expreſs, *that the* Elect-Knight, *attended by his Gentlemen and Servants, ſhall be led between two other of the* Knights-Companions, *the Officers of the Order going before them.* To this Rule the conſtant Practice has been anſwerable, at all Inſtallations ſince; the *Knight-Elect* proceeding either between two of the *Knights-Commiſſioners*, † when there hath been no *Lieutenant*; or between two of the *Knights* * *Aſſiſtants*, where a *Lieutenant* was conſtituted; or laſtly between the two *Senior Knights-Companions*, ‖ the *Sovereign* being preſent.

† *Lib. C. p.* 114.

* *Lib. N. p.* 274.

‖ *Lib. C. p.* 178.

When there have been *three* Commiſſioners nominated, then the two *Senior Commiſſioners* take the *Knight-Elect* between them, and the *Junior Knight-Commiſſioner* proceeds before them.

In all Caſes, where the *Sovereign* is preſent at an *Inſtallation*, (ſince the Cuſtom of inveſting with the *Collar* in the *Chapter-Houſe* was left off) this is generally to be obſerved, *viz.* that ſo ſoon as the Inveſtiture with the *Surcoat* is finiſhed, the *Sovereign* paſſes from the *Chapter-Houſe* into the *Choir*, with

with the whole *Proceeding* before him, leaving the *Elect-Knight* behind. And ſo ſoon as He and the *Knights-Companions* have taken their *Stalls* in the uſual Manner, the two *Senior Knights-Companions* (upon the *Sovereign*'s verbal Directions) deſcend from their *Stalls*, and ſtand under their *Banners*, while the *Alms-Knights* (but not the *Canons*) *Officers* of *Arms*, and the *three* inferiour *Officers* of the *Order* paſs out of the *Choir* in uſual Manner, and proceed before them to the *Chapter-Houſe*, from whence they introduce the *Elect-Knight* into the *Choir* to his *Inſtallation*. But if there be more *Knights* to be inſtalled, then the two next *Senior Knights* deſcend, and after them the next *Seniors*, till all the *Elect-Knights* are conducted in. The ſame Courſe is obſerved, when a *Lieutenant* is conſtituted; and in this *Proceeding* to *Inſtallation*, the *Regiſter* uſually carries a Book of the *New Teſtament* for the *Elect-Knight* to take his Oath upon; as alſo the *Oath* itſelf fairly written in Parchment.

Garter bears before * the *Knight-Elect* his *Mantle*, until he arrive at his *Stall*; * *Lib. N.* p. 274.

Stall; and King *Henry* VIII's Statutes place this Service upon ſome one of the *Knights-Companions* likewiſe; but we have not found in all our Search, that this was ever practis'd.

WHEN *Garter* bears thoſe *Ornaments* and *Enſigns*, upon a *Cuſhion*, † *v. ſupra*, *p.* 237. which we have taken † notice of already, before an *Elect-Knight* or a *Proctor*; he is always placed between the *Regiſter* and *Black Rod* in the Proceeding.

IN this Proceeding likewiſe the *Knight-Elect* goes bareheaded, holding his *Cap* in his Hand; it being thought incongruous (as was obſerv'd of the *Hood*) to put on any Part of the *Habit* or other *Ornaments* that muſt be taken off again, before the Inveſtiture be compleated: And this of putting on the *Cap* is the laſt among thoſe Ceremonies.

WHEN the *Proceeding* has entred the *Choir*, the *Alms-Knights* and *Officers* of *Arms* make their Obeyſances, firſt towards the *High Altar*, next to the *Sovereign*'s *Royal Stall*; all turning about by the Left Hand; then ſtill turning from the Right to the Left, they

they aſcend the *Haut-Pas*'s, even to the Rails ſet before the *Altar*, and forthwith divide themſelves, flanking on each Side (the *Juniors* ſtanding neareſt to the Rails) and at ſuch a ſpacious Diſtance, that the *Altar* may be diſcerned by all that follow in the *Proceeding*.

THEN the *Officers* of the *Order* make their like double Reverence; and laſt of all the two *Commiſſioners* (or *Knights-Aſſiſtants* or *Knights-Companions*) and *Knight-Elect*, all *three* together.

AFTER this the *Officers* of the *Order* turn aſide towards the *Stall*, deſigned for the *Elect-Knight*, and approaching near it, ſtand below in the *Choir*, while the *Commiſſioners* (or *Aſſiſtants* or *Knights-Companions*) paſs into the lower Row of *Stalls* (ſometimes called the middle Row) directly under the deſigned *Stall*, leading the *Elect-Knight* with them. And in this place *He* is to take his *Oath*, called in the Annals, * the *Sacred Oath of the Order of the Garter*; during which Time *He* ought to ſtand between the *Knights-Companions*, who brought *Him* thither. * *Lib. C.* p. 50.

THE

THE *Knight-Elect* being thus placed, the *Regiſter* of the *Order* (ſtanding before them, but below in the *Choir*) reads † or pronounces the *Oath*: For 'tis Part of his Duty, to adminiſter the ſame.

† *Lib. N. p.* 274. *Lib. C. p.* 114.

IN this ſolemn Ceremony, the *New Teſtament* whereon the *Oath* is taken (commonly open'd in ſome Place of the *Goſpels*) is indifferently held by one of the *three* inferiour *Officers* of the *Order*: For each of them, at different Times, appears to have ſo held it.

WHILE the *Oath* is adminiſtring, the *Elect-Knight* holds his *Right Hand* upon the Holy *Evangeliſts*, and as ſoon as the *Regiſter* hath pronounced the Words, the *Elect-Knight* anſwereth, *I will, ſo help me God*; then taketh off his Hand, reverently kiſſing the *Book*; and by this Ceremony ſealeth his Obligation to the *Statutes* of this moſt noble *Order*.

NOW the *Oath* which a *Knight-Subject* takes, at his *Perſonal Inſtallation*, being of very great Weight and Concernment, 'tis proper ſome Account ſhou'd be given of the Nature and

and Form thereof, and (leaving thoſe others taken by *Stranger-Princes* and their *Proctors*, and the Deputies of *Knights-Subjects*, to their proper Places) to enquire, what was its original Form, and how, when, and upon what Occaſion it received Addition and Enlargement.

First then, the Form of the ancient Oath, which the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution* appointed to be taken by the *Elect-Knight* was very ſhort, but comprehenſive, and was, *that He ſhould well and faithfully obſerve, to the uttermoſt of his Power, all the Statutes of the Order.* This was the full Content of the *Oath* taken by the firſt *Founders*, and to which they alſo affix'd their Seals; * and ſo it continued without Alteration or Addition, till towards the End of King *Edward* IV's Reign. But at a *Chapter* held in the 19th Year of the ſame King, it was decreed, that all the *Knights-Companions* then alive, and all ſuch as were afterwards admitted into the *Order* (and that before they took Poſſeſſion of their Stalls) ſhould be obliged to take this *Oath*

* *Lib. N.* p. 20.

† *Lib. N. p.* 146. also, † *viz. that they would aid, ſupport and defend with all their Power, the Royal* College *of St.* George, *within the Caſtle of* Windſor, *as well in its Poſſeſſions, as all other Things whatſoever.* In Purſuance of which Decree, there was a Form drawn up, wherein *both Oaths* were joined together, and entred in the *Black Book*, * where it is in *Latin*. In *Engliſh*, as follows, when pronounc'd by the *Regiſter* of the *Order*.

* *P.* 312.

You *being choſen to be one of the Companions of the moſt Honourable* Order *of the* Garter, *ſhall promiſe, and, by theſe Holy Evangeliſts by you manifeſtly touched, ſwear, truly and faithfully to obſerve and keep all the Statutes of the ſaid* Order, *and every Article in the ſame contained, for ſo much as to you belongeth and appertaineth: And further, that you ſhall help to defend and maintain, ſo much as in you lieth, the Rights and Liberties of the College of our bleſſed* Lady, *and St.* George *the Martyr, wherein the Honourable* Order *of the* Garter *is founded.*

THIS

THIS Clauſe, relating to the Maintenance and Defence of the Liberties of the *College*, we alſo find retained in the *Oath* drawn up for the Prince of Wales, and entred for a Precedent in the *Annals* of the *Order*; || which is as follows. || *Lib. N. p.* 312.

Ego [N] *Princeps* Guallię, *Dux* Cornubię, *&* *Comes* Ceſtrię, *primogenitus excellentiſſimi atq; invictiſſimi, Dei gratia, Regis* Angliæ *&* Franciæ, *Domini* Hiberniæ, *&* *hujus* Ordinis *meritò* Supremi, *jam nominatus atq; electus ad eundem* Ordinem *venerandum, promitto & do fidem, quod verè & fideliter pro viribus obſervabo cuncta* Ordinis *illius Statuta, & Statutorum articulos, quatenus ullo modo me contingent, juxta vim, formam & effectum eorundem, necnon* Collegii, *in quo is* Ordo *fundatur, jura tuebor.*

BUT when King *Henry* VIII. new modell'd the Statutes, we obſerve this *Clauſe* to be omitted, and ſome other Particulars of another Nature added to the general *Oath*, for due Obſerva-

tion of the *Statutes*; as firſt, inſtead of maintaining and defending the *College* in its Rights and Poſſeſſions, there is adjoin'd a *Clauſe, to defend the Honours, Quarrels, Rights, Dominions, and Cauſe of the* Sovereign; *to augment the Honour, and accompliſh all the Statutes, Points and Ordinances of the* Order, as may be ſeen at large in his Body of *Statutes.*

In the *third* of King *Edward* VI. a new Form was agreed on; and in the Beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, a further Alteration made; wherein the Words of Obligation were put in the negative: And this is the Form of the *Oath*, taken by a *Knight-Subject* at this Day; it being recorded at the End of the *Red Book* of the *Order*; and in *Engliſh* ſtands thus.

You *being choſen to be one of the Honourable Company of this moſt Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *ſhall promiſe and ſwear by the Holy Evangeliſts by you here touched, that wittingly or willingly you ſhall not break any Statute of the ſaid* Order, *or any Articles in them contained; the ſame being agreeable,*

able, and not repugnant to the Laws of Almighty God, and the Laws of this Realm, as far forth as to you belongeth and appertaineth: So God help you and his Holy Word.

As ſoon as the *Knight-Elect* hath taken the uſual *Oath*, he is led by the *Knights-Commiſſioners* (or *Knights-Aſſiſtants* or *Knights-Companions*) up to the *Stall* appointed for Him, thro' that Entrance next beneath it, and by them placed before it. In the mean time *Garter* advances into the lower Row of *Stalls* to the Place where the *Elect-Knight* ſtood, when he took his *Oath*; and from thence he preſenteth to them (with due Reverence) the *Mantle*, *Collar*, and *Book* of *Statutes*, who inveſt the *Elect-Knight* firſt with the *Mantle*, by putting it upon his Shoulders.

THERE are ſome Inſtances in the *Red-Book* * of *Black-Rod*'s inveſting them with the *Mantle* and *Collar*: But this is to be underſtood, of this *Officer*'s Aſſiſtance given to the *Knights-Companions*, whoſe Office it only is, and no otherwiſe. * P. 47, 61.

WHILST the Ceremony of Inveſtiture with the *Mantle* is performing, the Words of *Admonition* propet thereunto are pronounced; which at the Inſtallation of his late Majeſty King *Charles* II. were as follow.

Receive this Robe *of* Heavenly Colour *(the* Livery *of this moſt excellent* Order*) in Augmentation of thy Honour, ennobled with the* Shield *and* Red-Croſs *of our* Lord, *by whoſe Power thou mayeſt ſafely pierce Troops of thy Enemies, and be over them ever victorious; and being in this temporal Warfare glorious, in egregious and heroick Actions, thou mayeſt obtain eternal and triumphant Joy.*

IN the next place, the *Commiſſioners* (or *Aſſiſtants* or *Knights-Companions*) lay the Hood upon the *Knights Right Shoulder* over the *Mantle*, and bringing the *Tippet* athwart his Breaſt, tuck it under his *Girdle*, at which his Sword hangs.

AND laſtly, they tye the *Collar* about his *Shoulders*, over his *Mantle* and *Hood*; and at this Part of the Inveſtiture,

veſtiture, theſe Words of *Admonition* were pronounced at the Inſtallation of the late King *Charles* II. *viz.*

Wear this Collar *about thy* Neck, *adorned with the* Image *of the bleſſed* Martyr *and Soldier of* Chriſt *St.* George, *by whoſe Imitation provoked, thou mayſt ſo overpaſs both proſperous and adverſe Encounters, that having ſtoutly vanquiſhed thine Enemies, both of Body and Soul, thou mayſt not only receive the Praiſe of this tranſient Combat, but be crowned with the Palm of eternal Victory.*

As ſoon as the Ceremony of Inveſtiture, with the *Mantle*, *Hood* and *Collar* is finiſhed; the *Commiſſioners* (or *Knights-Aſſiſtants* or *Knights-Companions*) take the *Book* of the *Statutes* of the *Order*, and deliver it into the Hands of the new inveſted *Knight*. This *Book* the *Knight* is to keep ſafe in his own Cuſtody, both for Inſtruction and Direction, in ſuch Things as relate to the *Laws* and *Ceremonies* of this moſt noble *Order*, therein contained.

AFTER this, they give unto *Him* the Black Velvet *Cap*, adorned with Plumes of white Feathers: And this in particular is noted * to be the laſt among the Ceremonies performed at the Inſtallation of King *Charles* II.

* *Lib. R. p.* 146.

ALL Things relating to the full *Inveſtiture* being ended, there only remains, to complete this great Ceremony, the *Inſtallation* itſelf; which is performed in the following Manner.

THE new inveſted *Knight*, ſtanding before his *Stall*, and turning himſelf towards the *High Altar*, firſt makes a humble Reverence thitherward, and after a like Obeyſance towards the *Sovereign*, or in his Abſence, towards his *Stall*; which having done, the *Commiſſioners* (or *Aſſiſtants* or *Knights-Companions*) forthwith jointly embrace *Him* with much Joy (as their *Fellow* and *Companion*) according to the Cuſtom of *Inſtallations*, and ſet him down in his aſſigned *Stall*; thereto adding their Wiſhes for his Happineſs and Honour: And after ſuch complemental Reſpects have paſt, the

Com-

Commiſſioners (or *Knights-Aſſiſtants* or *Knights-Companions*) take their *Stalls*.

When there are two or more *Elect-Knights* appointed to receive the Honour of *Inſtallation* at one Solemnity; and that the Ceremony is performed by two *Commiſſioners* (or two *Knights-Aſſiſtants*) then as ſoon as they have finiſhed all the Ceremonies of *Inveſtiture* and *Inſtallation*, due to the *Senior* of them, they leave him ſo poſſeſs'd of his *Stall*, and forthwith return to the *Chapter-Houſe*; the *Alms-Knights*, *Officers* of *Arms*, and the inferiour *Officers* of the *Order* (after their uſual Reverences made in the middle of the *Choir*) going before them to the *Chapter-Houſe*; and thence they conduct the next *Senior Elect-Knight* into the *Choir*, where they perform all the Circumſtances of *Inveſtiture* and *Inſtallation*, as above: And this is to be repeated till all are inſtalled.

When the *Sovereign* hath nominated *three Commiſſioners* to his Service, in ſuch caſe they have returned altogether to fetch in the *other Knights* ſingly, that were to be inſtalled, and alternately changed their Places in the

Pro-

Proceeding to the ſeveral Inſtallations; one of them always going ſingle and foremoſt. When four *Knights-Aſſiſtants*, or four *Commiſſioners*, have been appointed, they have generally divided the Employment by an alternate Change. If the *Sovereign* be preſent, then two and two of the *Knights-Companions*, according to their Seniority.

THE *Knight* or *Knights* having now received a complete *Inſtallation*, the *Knights-Commiſſioners* (*Knights-Aſſiſtants* or *Knights-Companions*) with all civil Reſpect take their Leaves of the laſt *Inſtalled Knight*, and deſcend into the *Choir*, and with uſual Reverences take their own *Stalls*; the Senior *Knight-Companion* firſt aſcending. If the *Stalls* of the *Commiſſioners*, or *Aſſiſtants*, or *Knights-Companions*, be on the ſame Side with the laſt *Inſtalled Knight*, they then deſcend not into the *Choir*, but (after their Reverences made above) paſs directly to them along the *Stalls*.

THE Ceremonies and Circumſtances of *Inſtallation* being finiſh'd, the *Officers* of *Arms* firſt, next the *Alms-Knights*,

Knights, deſcend from the Steps of the *Altar*, and take their ſeveral Stations in the *Choir*. Then one of the *Canons* of the *College* (but if the *Sovereign* be preſent, the *Prelate* with the *Serjeant* of the *Veſtry* before him) is conducted to the *Altar* by the *Verger* of the Chappel; and there begins the *Service* appointed by the *Church*; which being finiſh'd, the Proceeding is made out of the *Choir* in the uſual Order (the new Inſtalled *Knight* being ranked according to his Stall) either to the *Preſence Chamber*, or the *Lieutenant*'s, or *Commiſſioner*'s *Lodgings*, as the Occaſion is.

If the *Inſtallation* be ſolemniz'd in the Morning, the *Service* of the *Church* having proceeded as far as the *Offertory*, two of the *Canons*, appointed to receive the *Offering*, are conducted to the *Altar* by their *Verger*; and forthwith, firſt the *Alms-Knights*, and then the *Officers* of *Arms*, aſcend again to the Steps of the *Altar*, and ſtank on each Side as before.

After this, *Garter* ſummons down the *Knights-Companions* to the *Offering*; who deſcend with uſual Reverences,

verences, and ſtand in the *Choir* under their proper *Stalls*, whilſt the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* deſcends from his Stall, and offers (firſt) for the *Sovereign* (he receiving the *Bezant* from the *Senior Knight*) and then returns to his Stall. And at this Inſtant was the uſual Time heretofore for Offering the Defunct *Knight's Atchievements*; which, by King *James* I's Appointment, was alter'd, and ordained to be perform'd before the *Elect-Knights* were inſtalled: Of which we ſhall ſpeak anon.

THE *Lieutenant*, after a ſhort Stay in his *Stall*, deſcends again, and proceeds up to the *Altar*, to make his own *Offering* both of *Gold* and *Silver*, and then returns; and after him, do the reſt of the *Knights-Companions* (including thoſe newly inſtalled) offer in their due Order; the Circumſtances of which will be taken notice of, when we diſcourſe of the *Offering* on the Grand-Feaſt Day.

BUT when the *Inſtallation* paſſes by *Commiſſioners*, there is then no *Offering* made for the *Sovereign*: But the *Commiſſioners* offer firſt, beginning with

with the two Seniors, and after them the other *Knights-Companions* in their due Order.

ON the Day of *Inſtallation*, it has, from ancient Time, been uſual to have a very ſumptuous and noble Feaſt prepared; and tho' it was agreed on in *Chapter* * (*ann.* 3. *Ed.* VI.) *That the Knights-Elect from henceforth might be inſtalled by Commiſſion without a Feaſt*, yet after his Reign, we find the old Uſage of making a *Feaſt* at this Solemnity reſtored.

* *Lib. N.* p. 302.

IF the *Sovereign* appoints the Inſtallation to be, when the *Feaſt* of St. *George* is alſo celebrated, and himſelf perſonally preſent, the *Feaſt* is then kept at the *Sovereign*'s Charge.

IF in ſuch Caſe he conſtitute a *Lieutenant*, the Inſtallation-Dinner is kept at the Expence of the *Lieutenant*; and uſually prepared in ſome of the *Sovereign*'s *Lodgings* in the *Caſtle*; ſometimes St. *George*'s *Hall*.

BUT when the *Inſtallation* is kept at any other Time of the Year, without the joint Obſervation of St. *George*'s *Feaſt*, then the new Inſtalled *Knight* or *Knights* are at all the Charge;

Charge; who for the moſt part have had the *Grand Dinner* prepared at the *Dean's Lodgings*. Nevertheleſs, wherever it is appointed, thither do the *Sovereign* (his *Lieutenant* and *Aſſiſtants* or *Commiſſioners*) together with the new Inſtalled *Knights* proceed in full Robes.

A QUESTION was ſtarted (*ann* 5. *Car.* I.) whether the *Lieutenant* (or *Commiſſioners*) ſhould ſit at Dinner in their *Habit* or not, ſince the Powers given them by their *Commiſſions*, ſeem to terminate, as ſoon as the *Knights* are inſtalled? However the Practice has generally been, of keeping on the *Whole Habit*, till the Grand Dinner be ended.

AT the ſecond *Courſe* or *Service*, *Garter* accompanied with the *Officers* of *Arms*, proclaim the *Styles* and *Titles* of Honour of the *Sovereign* (if he be perſonally or by *Lieutenant* preſent) in *Latin*, *French*, and *Engliſh*; and cries *Largeſs* thrice: Next, the *Styles* of the new inſtalled *Knights* in *French* or *Engliſh* only, with two *Largeſſes*, and in the Order they were inſtalled.

WHEN

WHEN the *Sovereign* conſtitutes a *Lieutenant*, then is the *Lieutenant*'s *Style* alſo proclaimed; and to his other Titles is added that of this preſent Honour of *Lieutenantſhip*.

WHEN neither the *Sovereign* is preſent, nor his *Lieutenant*, then the *Sovereign*'s Style is not proclaimed, nor thoſe of the *Commiſſioners*, but only of the new inſtalled *Knights*.

AS ſoon as Dinner is ended, the *Knights-Companions* riſe from the Table, and withdraw to diſrobe themſelves, and therewith the Solemnity of *Inſtallation* ends.

AS to the Setting up the *Helm*, *Creſt*, *Sword*, *Banner*, and *Plate*, of the new inſtalled *Knight*, over his *Stall*; tho' it be no Part of the Ceremony of *Inſtallation*, yet is it a Conſequent thereunto, and an inſeparable Appendix: Accordingly, by the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, 'tis ordained, that the *Time* for ſetting up the *Atchievements* ſhall be, when the *Elect-Knight* comes to *Windſor Caſtle*, *viz.* to his *Inſtallation*, and not before. The Ceremonies of *Inſtallation* are firſt to be finiſhed: For as the *Atchievements* are

ſet

ſet up in the Memorial of the *Knight-Elect*'s being inſtalled a Companion of the *Order*; ſo 'tis inconſiſtent with the Rules of Honour, to have the *Sign* or *Memorial* of an Action to precede the Action itſelf. Nor are theſe *Atchievements* ſet up, as if *the outward Form of ſuch Things have in them any great Force*; *but* (as the || *Black Book* expreſſes it) *that the Memory of great Actions done, beget that Ardor in the Breaſts of excellent Perſons, which never is at reſt, till ſome eminent Atchievements of theirs have overtaken the others Fame and Glory.*

|| P. 10.

'Tis here farther to be obſerved, that the *Statutes* of this moſt Noble *Order* expreſly provide, * that the *Knight*'s *Atchievements* ſhall not be permitted to be hung up, until all the *Duties* and *Fees*, enjoined by the *Statutes*, to be paid the *College*, be firſt diſcharged: But 'tis certain there are no Fees due (and conſequently cannot be challenged) till the Ceremonies, upon which they become due, are completely finiſhed. This Matter was clearly and fully ſettl'd in a *Chap-*

* *V. ſup. p.* 62, 63, 105.

ter

ter † held 22. *Charles* II. wherein it was ordained, *That not any of the* Atchievements *of an* Elect-Knight *ſhall be ſet up in the Chappel at* Windſor, *before he be* Inſtalled, *and the* Fees *of* Inſtallation *paid.*

† *Lib. Carol. p.* 81.

IT may now be proper to take notice of the *Inſtallation* of a *Knight-Subject* by *Proxy.* This was not allowed of at the *Inſtitution* of the *Order*; but rather expreſly * forbid; which ſo continu'd, till the Reign of King *Henry* V. when *John* Duke of *Bedford*, the *Sovereign*'s *Deputy* for holding the Feaſt of St. *George* at *Windſor*, and other the *Knights-Companions* then preſent, took it into Conſideration, that where a *Knight-Subject* elected into the *Order* was at that Time employed beyond the Seas, in Service of the *Sovereign*, and likely to continue there on that Employment, it was concluded, that the ſaid Duke ſhould make an Addreſs to the *Sovereign*, by Letter under the Seal of the *Order* (he being at that Time engaged in the War with *France*) that he would be pleas'd to remove from the *Statutes* all Manner of Scruple, and (in Caſes of like

* *V. ſup. p.* 63.

Hazard and Danger) to ordain, * *That* Knights Subjects *might be permitted to receive the Privilege and Favour of a complete Admittance, and full Poſſeſſion of their Stalls and Rights, by their* Deputies *or* Proctors, *no leſs than* Strangers; *notwithſtanding the Clauſe in the* Statutes *to the contrary.* In Purſuance of which, about 2 Years afterwards, it was, among other Things, decreed by the ſaid King Henry, † *That where any* Elect-Knight *was actually in the* Sovereign's *Wars, or otherwiſe employed in the* Sovereign's *Affairs, he ſhould poſſeſs and enjoy the Privilege of a* Stranger *in this Particular, viz. to be admitted to his Stall by a legal Proxy; who ſhould do and perform all Things enjoined to the Proxy of a Stranger.* This Decree King *Henry* VIII. not only confirm'd but enlarg'd; ‡ thoſe within the Kingdom, as well as beyond Sea, being made capable of receiving the *Sovereign*'s Licence herein: Of which an Inſtance was given, *ann.* 1. *Car.* I. in the Earl of *Dorſet*, who being ſick ‖ obtained the *Sovereign*'s Licence to be inſtalled by his *Deputy* Sr. *Richard Young.*

* *Regiſt. Chartac. F. 6. b.*

† *Lib. N. p.* 67.

‡ *V. ſup. p.* 106.

‖ *Lib. R. p.* 28.

THE

THE Qualifications of a *Proctor* nominated by a *Knight-Subject*, are the ſame with thoſe required in a *Stranger's Proxy*; * which the Statutes of *Ed.* III. point out very plainly: I ſhall only obſerve at preſent, that not any *Proxy* for a *Knight-Subject* hath at any Time been admitted to be inſtalled under the Degree of a *Knight*; who is likewiſe to be † *of an honeſt and untainted Reputation.*

* *V. ſup.* p. 60.

† *Lib. N.* p. 62. *Regiſt. Chart. Fol.* 5. *b.*

IN order to ſuch Inſtallation by *Proxy*, a *Commiſſion* is to be preſented by the *Chancellor* of the *Order* to the *Sovereign* for his Sign Manual; to which the great Seal of the *Order* is afterwards affix'd; by vertue of which Commiſſion, the *Knight-Elect* is inſtall'd with all the Privileges and Solemnities, as another *Knight* when preſent.

THE *Mantle* of the Order, as well as the *Atchievements &c.* are to be taken care of (at the *Knight*'s Charge) by the *Proctor*; whoſe Duty || is to bring them along with him to *Windſor*, after he has conſulted with *Garter* about it.

|| *V. ſup.* p. 60.

As to the *Proxy*'s Proceeding to the *Chapter-Houſe*, his Place is *that* immediately after the *Provincial Kings of Arms*, becauſe as yet he hath not taken Poſſeſſion of his *Principal*'s Stall, which gives him a Place in his Return according to its Dignity. He paſſes into the Eaſt Iſle behind the High Altar, as ſoon as he arrives within St. *George*'s *Chappel*, and there repoſes himſelf, till ſent for, by the *Sovereign*, or his *Lieutenant*, or *Commiſſioners*, who proceed on to the *Chapter-Houſe*. But if the *Proxy* paſs not in the Proceeding, he then goes privately to this Place, before the Proceeding ſets forward.

After the Chapter is open'd, *Garter* preſents the *Commiſſion*; and the *Letters of Deputation* being read, the *Proxy* is ſent for and conducted by *Garter*: And heretofore, ſo ſoon as the *Proxy* was admitted into the *Chapter-Houſe*, the *Mantle* of his *Principal* was uſually laid upon his *Right* * Arm by the *Sovereign*'s *Lieutenant* or *Commiſſioners*; and being ſo laid, Part of it was alſo ſpread upon the *Proxy*'s Shoulders, the Scutcheon of St. *George* lying

* *V. ſup. p.* 61.

lying uppermoſt, and the Cordons laid fair to be ſeen; and in this Manner he bore it in the *Proceeding* to the Stall of his *Principal*, where he held it till Service was ended. But King *Charles* II. directed the *Mantle* to be borne upon the *Left* Arm. It appears (*ann.* 5. *Eliz.*) that the Earl of *Warwick*'s *Proctor* had the *Mantle* borne before him into the *Choir* by *Garter*, in the ſame Manner as is uſed to *Knights* perſonally inſtalled, and not deliver'd him, till he had taken the *Oath*; and at the Delivery thereof, the Words of *Admonition* were pronounced by the *Regiſter* of the *Order*. Such Particulars and Ceremonies as are applicable both to an *Elect-Knight* and *Proxy* in the Inſtallation, are here omitted, as having been conſider'd already.

THE Form of the *Proctor*'s *Oath* hath no Difference from the *Oath* which an *Elect-Knight* himſelf takes; and after ſuch *Oath* has been adminiſtred, he is led up from the lower *Stall* into the Stall of his *Principal* directly above it, where the *Knights*, who conducted him into the *Choir*, firſt take

the *Mantle* and lay it on his Left Arm, next laying their Hands upon him, in the Name of his *Lord* and *Maſter* (from whom he received his Deputation) they ſet him down therein: And ſo the Ceremony of *Inſtallation* being fully finiſh'd, the *Service* of the *Church* begins.

If the Inſtallation be performed in the Morning, then there is an *Offering* of Gold and Silver, which the *Proxy* does, when his Turn comes, in Conjunction with the *Knight* ſitting in the oppoſite *Stall*, having two *Officers* of *Arms* before them.

As ſoon as the Ceremony of the *Offering* is finiſhed, the *Service* of the *Church* proceeds; and being ended, the Return to the *Chapter-Houſe* is in like Order as before, except, that now the *Proxy* takes his Place, according to the Dignity of the Stall of his *Principal*. But in regard the *Statutes* * do expreſly declare, that after the *Proxy* hath been admitted to the Stall of his *Principal*, he ſhall neither wear the *Mantle*, nor have any Voice in *Chapter*, nor preſume to enter there in the Abſence of *Him* that ſent him; there-

* *V. ſup. p.* 61.

therefore hath it been the *Common Practice*, to take off the *Mantle* from his *Arm*, at the *Chapter-Houſe Door*; ſo that at this Place, the Bearing thereof hath uſually terminated, *it* having for the moſt part been deliver'd to the *Verger* of the *Chappel* (tho' ſometimes to the *Sexton*, at other times to *Garter*, ſo alſo to the *Black Rod*) who hath taken it from the *Proxy*'s Arm, and carried it into the *Chapter-Houſe*; this done, the *Proctor* retires privately to his *Lodgings*.

AT *Dinner* the *Proxy* ſits with the *Lieutenant* (or *Commiſſioners*) and takes the Place, where his *Principal* ſhould ſit, if he was preſent. His *Principal*'s Stile is proclaimed in *French* or *Engliſh*, at the uſual Time and at his due Place, together with the other Stiles: And the *Proxy* is to take care, that the *Atchievements* and *Plate* of his *Principal* be ſet up in the *Chappel* of St. *George*, ſo ſoon as the Inſtallation is completed.

WE proceed now to conſider the Manner of *Electing Strangers* into this noble *Order*. And firſt,

FORASMUCH as *Strangers Elect* are uſually *Emperors*, *Kings* or *Sovereign Princes*; the Neceſſity of whoſe Affairs obliged them to abide in their own Dominions, and ſeldom or rarely permitted them to receive a Perſonal Inſtallation in the *College* of the *Order*; therefore ſeveral Privileges were thought fit, by the Wiſdom of the *Founder* of this moſt noble *Order*, to be offered and eſtabliſhed in *their* Favour; as principally, the giving them honourable Notice of their *Elections*; allowing convenient Time of Conſideration for *Acceptance*; affording them Inveſtiture in their own *Countries*, and permitting their *Inſtallations* to be performed at *Windſor* by *Subſtitutes* or *Deputies*.

IT was therefore by the *Statutes* of the *Inſtitution* ordained, * *that when any ſuch were choſen into the* Order, *they ſhould be* certified *of their* Elections *by the* Sovereign; *and beſides that at his Charge, the* Garter *ſhou'd be ſent over to them, with the* Mantle *and* Statutes *of the* Order, *ſealed with the Common Seal.* And this to be done with all convenient Speed, ſo *that they might have*

* *V. ſup.* p. 60.

have notice thereof, at leaſt within four Months, from the Time of Election, to the end they might adviſe and determine with themſelves, (from Conſideration had of the Tenour of the *Statutes*) *whether they wou'd receive or refuſe the Honour of this moſt Noble Order.*

In Purſuance of theſe Directions, it became Cuſtomary for the *Sovereign*, together with his *Letters* to the *Elect Stranger* giving Signification of his Election, to ſend (and that by way of ſolemn Embaſſy) the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order*, as alſo a *Book* of the *Statutes*; and in caſe the *Election* was accepted, then the *Elect Stranger* might receive *Inveſtiture*, before the Return of the Perſons by whom the *Habit* was ſent.

The Right of bearing theſe *Letters* ſignifying *Election* and returning the *Stranger*'s Anſwer, belongs to *Garter*; being confirmed to him by the *Conſtitutions* * appertaining to his Office.

* *Cap.* 4.

The Statutes of *Henry* VIII. with more Caution than thoſe of the *Inſtitution*, do ordain, *that Letters ſignifying Election, and the Book of Statutes only*

only be ſent at firſt; But not the *Garter* and *Mantle*, till a Return be made, whether the *Stranger Elect* (after Conſultation had with the *Statutes*) will receive the *Order* or not: And upon ſuch Acceptance certified to the *Sovereign*, 'tis then decreed, that a ſolemn Embaſſy be ſent with the whole *Habit*, *George* and *Collar*: However, when the *Sovereign* hath been well aſſured before-hand, that the *Elect Stranger* wou'd not refuſe the Honour; upon ſuch Confidence, the ſame Embaſſy (as anciently) diſpatch'd both Ceremonies; the whole *Habit* of the *Order* being deliver'd to the *Elect Stranger* within few Days after his Acceptance is declared.

WHEN the *Elect Stranger* has accepted the *Order*, he is obliged by the Statutes, to return to the *Sovereign* a *Certificate* of ſuch his Acceptance, and Deſire of Ratification. And in the 13th of *Car.* I. there was a Proviſional Decree paſs'd, * *that Garter and all others (whom it pleaſed the* Sovereign *jointly to commiſſionate with Him) ſhould be moſt punctually careful, that they deliver'd not the* Enſigns *of the*

* *Lib. R. p.* 120.

Order

Order *into the Hands of any ſuch Prince, till they were fully ſatisfied by his* Letters Patent *of his kind and grateful Acceptance thereof*; *or* † *in caſe of Refuſal to forbear their Preſentation.*

† *Sir* Tho. Row's *Journal, p.* 11.

We meet with but one Inſtance of any *Stranger*, who after Election refuſed to accept of the *Order*; which was that of *Philip*, the ſecond Duke of *Burgundy*, elected by King *Henry* V. On the contrary, how acceptable this Honour hath been to ſeveral other Kings and Princes, and what Eſteem and Value they have ſet upon it, may be ſeen in their ſeveral *Certificates*, ſent back to the *Sovereign* of this moſt noble *Order*, after their *Inveſtitures* with the *Habit* and *Enſigns* thereof. And this is what comes next to be treated of.

The *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, as we obſerv'd before, appoint, that this *Legation* with the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order* be diſpatch'd with *convenient Speed*; which muſt needs be interpreted with ſuch Latitude, as may referr both to the *Sovereign*'s Conveniency of ſending, and the *Strangers* Capacity of receiving. And therefore we

we find it ſix Years after the Election of the Kings of *Arragon* and *Poland*, and the Duke of *Brunſwick*, e're we meet with the firſt Notice of * the *Sovereign*'s Determination of ſending over the *Habit* of the *Order* to them. But in King *Henry* VIII's Body of *Statutes*, this Clauſe of ſending with *convenient Speed* is wholly omitted; and the *Sovereign* is now unlimited as to the Time.

* *Lib. N. p.* 104, 115.

In reference to this ſolemn *Embaſſy*, there are ſeveral Things to be provided before the *Ambaſſadors* or *Commiſſioners* take their Journey; as *Credential Letters*, *Commiſſion of Legation*, *Warrants for the Habit and Enſigns* of the *Order*, and *other Neceſſaries*.

The *Credential Letters* are (as to Particulars) drawn ſuitable to the preſent Occaſion, by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and directed to the *Stranger Elect*. They paſs under the Sign Manual of the *Sovereign*, and Signet of the Order. ---- The Purport of them may be ſeen in Mr. *Aſhmole*'s † Appendix.

† *N.* lviii. lix. *&c.*

The

THE *Commiſſion* of *Legation* is likewiſe to be prepared by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, fairly ingroſſed in *Vellom*, and ſealed with the Great Seal of the *Order*; where * the Merits and Worthineſs of the *Elect Stranger* to deſerve the Honour of *Election*, and the Reaſons inducing the *Sovereign* to conferr the ſame upon him, are elegantly ſet forth in the Preamble. * *Ib. N.* lxii. *&c.*

AS to the Perſons nominated in the *Commiſſion*; the firſt *Embaſſy* upon this Occaſion, recorded in the *Black Book* of the *Order*, † is that to *Edward* King of *Portugal* *Ann.* 13. *Henry* VI. to whom, for the Dignity of the Affair, *Garter* was thought fit by the *Chapter* to be ſent alone with the *Habit* of the *Order:* And hence is the Original of *Garter*'s Claim to this Employment. † *P.* 91.

NEVERTHELESS, in ſucceeding Times, as the *Order* grew up into Eſteem, both at home and abroad; ſome one of the *Knights-Companions* was made Choice of by the *Sovereign* to be the Principal in theſe *Legations.* And ſometimes other Noble Men, and Perſons of great Quality (tho' not *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*, yet) were em-

employed Chief in these Embassies. It was likewise usual heretofore, to join some Persons of Rank and Quality, or Office near the *Sovereign*, in the *Commission*. And to these Persons the *Sovereign* thought fit sometimes to add a *Doctor* of the *Civil Law*, or an *Ecclesiastical* Person having Dignity, and such as had the Language of the *Country* whither they were sent. Besides, an *Ecclesiastical* Person was thought fittest * to administer the *Oath*, and to pronounce the Words of *Signification*, at the Time of Investiture with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*. For these Reasons we find *John Russel* Archdeacon of *Berkshire*, joined in Commission with one of the *Knights-Companions Galliard* Sieur *de Duras*; and *Edward Lee* Archdeacon of *Colchester* sent over with the Lord *Morley*; with others, taken notice of ‖ by Mr. *Ashmole*. But of later Times, the *Sovereign*'s Ambassador, Resident with the *Stranger Elect*, hath supplied this Place.

* *Lib. N.* *p.* 309, 310.

‖ *P.* 392.

Besides the Persons abovemention'd, *Garter* Principal King of Arms was always joined in these *Commissions* of

of *Legation*, not only to keep on foot his Right to the Employment, but to manage the ceremonious Part of this Solemnity: And beſides the ancient Right, Uſage and Preſcription on *Garter*'s Side, we find it declared by a Decree* in *Chapter* (*Ann.* 13. *Car.* I.) *that the carrying of the* Enſigns *of the* Order *to* Stranger Princes, *doth properly belong to* Garter.

* *Lib. R.* p. 120.

Beſides thoſe Perſons joined in the *Commiſſion* of *Legation*, there have been often appointed, either *Norroy* King of Arms, or ſome one of the *Heralds*, to go in the Quality of an Attendant on this Service, not only for the Honour of the *Sovereign*, but of the *Stranger* that is to receive the *Habit*; in regard the Ceremonies of *Inveſtiture* with the whole *Habit*, require the Preſence and Aſſiſtance of two Officers of Arms.

In the third Place, there are to be prepared for this *Legation*, *Warrants* for the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order*; and theſe are alſo to be drawn up by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, who is to attend the *Sovereign* for his Sign Manual thereunto. One *Warrant* is to be

be directed to the *Maſter* of the *Sovereign*'s Great *Wardrobe*, to deliver to *Garter* King of Arms, the *Mantle*, with a Scutcheon of St. *George* within a Garter, embroidered on the Left Shoulder, and Taſſels thereunto belonging, as alſo the *Surcoat* and *Hood*. There is alſo another *Warrant* drawn up, for the Delivery of the *Enſigns* of the *Order* to *Garter*, *viz.* the rich *Garter*, the great *Collar* of the *Order*, with a *George* appendant, and another ſmaller *George* hanging in a blue Ribband; together with *Caſes* for them, lined with Purple Velvet, and gilt on the Outſide: And ſometimes theſe *Enſigns* have been delivered out of the *Jewel-Houſe* to the *Herald* at Arms, joined in the Legation in *Garter*'s ſtead: The ſaid *Warrant* has ſometimes been directed to the *Lord Treaſurer of England*; but uſually theſe *Enſigns* are deliver'd out of the *Jewel-Houſe Office*.

THERE are ſeveral other Neceſſaries to be provided, and ſometimes are inſerted in the *Sovereign*'s *Warrants* for the *Habit* of the *Order*, and at other

ther times iſſue forth by particular Warrants, *viz.*

A *Black Velvet Cap*, with white Feathers and a Heron Sprig.

A *Girdle* and *Hangers* of the ſame coloured Velvet with the *Surcoat*.

A *Yard* of Purple Velvet; which has been uſually allowed out of the Great *Ward-Robe*, for covering the *Book* of *Statutes*, which the *Sovereign* ſends to the *Elect Stranger*: And for the Vellom, Writing and Binding the ſaid Book, there is a Fee paid by the *Sovereign* to the *Regiſter* of the *Order*; which generally hath been proportioned to the Degree of the *Stranger*. The Allowance made this *Officer* for the *Book* ſent to *Henry* IV. of *France*, was 5 *l.*

THIS *Book* of *Statutes* ought to be ſealed with the *Common Seal* of the *Order*; which not only the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, but all the other ſucceeding Bodies of *Statutes* do appoint: Beſides, at a *Chapter* held (13 *Car.* I.) this Law was confirm'd, and again decreed, * *that the* Book *of* Statutes *ſent to any* Stranger Prince *ſhould be ſealed with*

* *Lib. R.* p. 120.

with the Great Seal *of the* Order, *affixed to a Label of blue Silk and Gold.*

THERE is alſo to be provided a large Purple Velvet *Cuſhion*, to carry the Robes on, when they are to be preſented; two *Majeſty Scutcheons*, with ſeveral other Things relating to the *Tranſportation* of the *Habit* of the *Order*; which the curious Reader may ‖ P. 397. ſee at his Leiſure, in Mr. *Aſhmole*, ‖ as alſo an Account of the *Expences* the Crown is at in ſuch a *Legation*.

THE Ceremonies obſerved at a *Stranger Prince*'s Reception of the whole *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order*, are highly Solemn, whether we conſider the Manner of *Inveſtiture* performed by the *Sovereign*'s *Ambaſſadors*, or the *Feſtivity* and *Triumphs* added by the new *Inveſted Stranger*---- This Solemnity is drawn out in its full Length, and a clear Proſpect given of its Magnificence, by the ſame laborious and ingenious Pen juſt now mention'd; whither I muſt likewiſe referr the Reader (*Cap.* xv. *Sect.* iii.)

AFTER this great Solemnity of *Inveſtiture* is completely finiſhed, the *Ambaſſadors* are then to obtain from the

the new *Inveſted Stranger* a publick Inſtrument, teſtifying the Reception of the ſaid *Habit* and *Enſigns*, ſigned with his Hand, and ſealed with his great Seal.

We now proceed to the *Inſtallation* of ſuch an *Inveſted Stranger*, by *Proxy*. For by the *Statutes* * of *Inſtitution* he is then oblig'd to ſend hither a *Proctor* or *Deputy*, to be inſtalled on his Behalf in the Seat aſſigned *Him* within the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windſor*. The Time limited by the *Statutes* † of *Inſtitution*, for ſending him hither, is eight Months after Inveſtiture; but *thoſe* of *Henry* V. and *Henry* VIII. allow only ſeven Months and no more, and that not only after Inveſtiture, but after the *Stranger* hath certified the *Sovereign* of his Reception of the *Order*.

* *V. ſupra*, p. 60.

† *Ib.*

As to the *Proxy*, it ſeems to reſt in the Pleaſure of the *Stranger*, whether he will chooſe to ſend over hither any Perſon of his own Court, or give his Procuration to ſome one of the *Sovereign's Subjects*; the latter has been ſeveral times done, out of deſire to favour ſome of our Nobility, or other

Perſons of Quality at Court, with this Honour.

As to the *Proxy*'s Qualifications, ſee the *Statutes* * of *Inſtitution*; ſoon after his Arrival, the *Sovereign* gives him Audience, receives his Letters of Procuration; after that aſſigns a Day for Inſtallation, and nominates *Knights-Companions* his *Commiſſioners*.

* *V. ſup.* p. 60.

The Preparations for the Inſtallation of a *Stranger* by *Proxy*, are the ſame as for the *Proxy* of a *Knight-Subject*, and mention'd as before, *viz.* the *Commiſſion* for Inſtallation; *Letters* of Notice to the *Commiſſioners*; *Warrants* for Removal of Stalls; for the *Stranger*'s *Atchievements*; and ſome other Particulars of leſs Note. All which are to be obtained by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, under the *Sovereign*'s Sign Manual, to which the Signet of the *Order* is to be affixed.

What has been before obſerv'd touching the publick Proceeding to the *Chapter-Houſe*, † at the Perſonal Inſtallation of a *Knight Subject*, and other Particulars relating to that Ceremony, will extend hither, both as to Order and Circumſtances: Only this

† *V. ſup.* p. 240, 241, &c.

this general Rule is to be remembred, that the Place of a *Stranger Prince*'s *Proctor* here, is next after the *Provincial Kings* (unleſs the *Proctor* of a *Knight-Subject* happen to intervene) and before the *Junior Knight-Companion*, unleſs a *Knight-Subject Elect* paſs then in the Proceeding.

If the *Proxy* of a *Stranger* paſs in the *Proceeding* which the *Sovereign* or his *Lieutenant* or *Commiſſioners* make to the *Chapter-Houſe*, then does *He* for the moſt part give his Attendance in the *Preſence Chamber*, or in that Room, from whence the *Lieutenant* or the *Commiſſioners* do proceed, and there joineth himſelf.

But ſometimes the *Commiſſioners*, after their ſetting forth (as an Act of grand Reſpect) have taken the *Proxy*'s Lodgings by the way, and there received him into the *Proceeding*.

Sometimes the *Proxies* have paſs'd privately to the Eaſt Iſle of St. *George*'s Chappel, and there reſted, before the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* went into the *Chapter-Houſe*; or elſe proceeded into the *Choir*, without entring

thereinto, as it has ſometimes happened.

After ſome time of Conſultation in the *Chapter Houſe*, the *Proxy* is ſent for in by *Garter*, who conducts *Him* to the *Chapter-Houſe* Door (his going *farther* has been diſputed, but, it ſhou'd ſeem, not well grounded) and his Reception there by the *Commiſſioners*, is after the ſame Manner, and with the ſame Circumſtances of Reſpect and Ceremony, as is uſed to the *Knight Elect* or to his *Proxy*. Nor need more be ſaid concerning the Delivery of the *Mantle* to the *Proctor*, and the Manner and Time of putting *it* on, than what has been obſerv'd * already.

* P. 276, 277.

As to the *Proxy*'s Proceeding into the *Choir*, King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes* appoint, *that he ſhall be accompanied and led by two* Knights-Companions *of the* Order, *from the Door of the* Chapter-Houſe, *unto the Stall aſſigned to his Principal*, he going bare-headed.

The ancient *Oath* appointed by the *Statutes* † of *Inſtitution*, to be taken by a *Stranger*'s *Proxy*, is, *faithfully to obſerve, to the utmoſt of his Power, the* Statutes *of the* Order. Frequent Exceptions

† V. ſup. p. 63.

ceptions have been made hereunto by *Strangers*; but *ſome*, tho' admitted, have been obtained with very great Difficulty, and much Debate had between the *Sovereign's Council*, and the *Stranger-Prince's Ambaſſadors*, leſt otherwiſe the Dignity and Reputation of the *Order* ſhou'd (inſtead of being kept up) be leſſen'd: Becauſe, where the Forbearance or Omiſſion of any Circumſtance, either in the Inveſtiture or Ceremony of Inſtallation, hath been yielded unto, it hath ſometimes or other been taken notice of, and brought into Precedent, to the Prejudice of the *Order*. Therefore great Care ought to be taken, in yielding to the Omiſſion of any Part of ſo grand a Ceremony: And the ſtanding upon Terms hath not been without good Succeſs; ſince known, that tho' other Intereſts (different or contrary to the *Sovereign's*) have ſometimes aſſaulted *Strangers* deſirous of this Honour, yet their preſent Neceſſities of obtaining his Friendſhip, by receiving this *Order*, have cauſed them, tho' with ſome unwillingneſs, to accept of this obliging Tye from him.

AFTER the *Oath* (however qualify'd) has been adminiſtred to a *Stranger's Proxy*, the two *Knights-Commiſſioners* paſs up with him into the higher Row of Stalls, and ſo to that aſſigned for his Principal; where being arrived, they take the *Mantle* from Garter, and lay it upon the *Proctor's Left* Arm, with the *Scutcheon* of St. *George* uppermoſt.

THE Act of *Inſtallation* is the ſame, as above: * But by an Order in *Chapter* held (23. *Car.* II.) the *Proxies* are prohibited *ſitting* in their *Stalls*, during the Time of Divine Service, but on the contrary directed to ſtand before them, in the uppermoſt Row of *Stalls* (uncover'd) holding their *Mantles* on their *Left* Arms until it be ended.

* *P.* 264.

THE *Proctor's Offering* of *Gold* and *Silver*, is according to the Degree and Seniority of his Principal's Stall: And if the *Inſtallation* be celebrated when St. *George's* Feaſt is held by the *Sovereign's Lieutenant*, the *Proxy* ought not to offer, until the *Lieutenant* has firſt offer'd for the *Sovereign*. And in caſe the *Lieutenant's* Stall be higher than

than the *Stranger's*, for whom the *Proctor* is inſtalled, then the *Lieutenant* alſo offereth for himſelf before *him*.

As to the Order obſerved in *Offering* by the *Proctor*, he doth it with all the Circumſtances of Ceremony, as if his *Lord* was preſent; his *Train* borne, and a *Knight-Companion* or ſome other great Perſonage, attending on his Left Hand, to give *Him* the *Offering*; with Carpets and Cuſhions ſpread to kneel upon at the Time of *Offering*.

When the *Proxy* hath offer'd, he returns back to his *Lord's Stall*, in the ſame Manner as do the *Knights-Companions*, *viz.* by the Eaſt End of the Stalls, and not thro' the Body of the *Choir*.

The *Proxy*, as at the *Offering*, ſo likewiſe in his Return out of the *Choir*, ought to take the Place of his Principal. The other Ceremonies in common with the Inſtallation of a *Knight-Subject* by *Proxy*, may well be omitted, as having been ſpoken to already.

As to the *Dinner* on this Day, which is prepared at the *Sovereign's* Charge,

Charge, there are ſome things peculiar to the *Proxy* of a *Stranger*; As firſt,

BEFORE *Dinner* (if the Inſtallation paſs by *Commiſſioners*) the *Proxy* ſhall waſh alone, ſhall ſit at the chief Place of the Table, and alone, and ſhall be ſerved alone: But the other *Knights-Commiſſioners* ſhall ſit at the End of the Table--of all which there are ſeveral Inſtances.

IF the *Sovereign's Lieutenant* be preſent, the *Proctor* dines at the ſame Table with him, and then, a little before the ſecond Courſe is brought in, the *Sovereign's Style* is proclaimed in *Latin*, *French*, and *Engliſh*, with uſual Ceremony, as above: * But otherwiſe, only the *Style* of the new inſtalled *Prince*, and but once.

* P. 270.

THE *Proctor* is to take care, that *Garter* ſet up the *Atchievements* of his *Principal* over his Stall, ſo ſoon as the Solemnity of *Inſtallation* is over, as alſo fix the *Plate* of *His* Arms on the Back of the ſaid Stall.

I NOW proceed, in taking notice of the *Honours* paid to *Deceaſed Knights-Companions*.

AND

AND firſt, to premiſe ſomething concerning that great Number of *Maſſes* celebrated for *Defunct Knights*; this was done conſonantly to the Perſuaſion of thoſe Times, and continued, until the 32d of *Henry* VIII. when, upon a Motion made concerning thoſe Suffrages for the Dead, in a *Chapter* held in his Palace at *Weſtminſter*, this Decree paſſed, *viz.* * *That every one of the* Knights Companions, *in Lieu of the ſaid* Maſſes, *ſhould for the future, after the Death of any of their* Brethren, *according to the Rates of their Degrees hereafter mention'd, and immediately upon Demand made for the ſame, by the* Regiſter *and Dean of* Windſor, *or one of them, pay the ſeveral Sums of Mony ſpecify'd.* Which Sums are particularly ſpecify'd in *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, † *Art.* 19.

* *Lib. N. p.* 283. *v. ſup. p.* 97.

† *V. ſup. p.* 97.

THE Monies collected upon this Account (called *Black* Monies) were ‖ appointed by the aforeſaid Decree, to be diſtributed and imployed in *Alms Deeds*; of which Sort (as there mention'd) *are the Reparation of High-Ways, the Relief of the Poor, and other Things of like Nature, as the* Sovereign *ſhould*

‖ *Lib. N. p.* 283.

ſhould from time to time limit and appoint.

AND of the Receipt of theſe Sums, and their Disburſments, it was alſo decreed, *That the* Dean *and Regiſter*, or either of them, ſhould yearly in *Chapter* preſent his Account to the *Sovereign* under the Penalty of ten Pounds, to be employed for ſuch like Uſe, for every ſuch Default. And, that *Knight-Companion*, whoſe Portion did appear to be then unpaid, ſhould, by way of Penalty or Fine, * add unto his former Duty, another third Part of the ſame; and ſo for every Year that he ſhould be behind, to pay a third Part more, then he was at firſt enjoined to pay, according to the Rate ſpecify'd, as above.

* *V. ſup. p.* 98.

THIS charitable Diſtribution, in a *Chapter* held, *ann.* 5. *Ed.* VI. was enlarged *to the Relief* † *and Succour of the* Poor, *where moſt Need was, in the Town of* Windſor, *and other Towns, Villages, and Places, at and by the Diſcretion of the* Dean *of* Windſor, *he adviſing with ſome honeſt* Men, *who could beſt give an Account of ſuch as were truly poor and indigent.*

† *Lib. N. p.* 306.

THIS

THIS Decree appears to have been confirmed || by King *Edward* VI. Queen *Mary*, and Queen *Elizabeth*: And yet for many Years was the Collection of theſe Obit Monies neglected, even till the 9th of King *Charles* I. When the the Noble Earl of *Portland*, inflamed with Zeal for the reſtoring ſo pious a Work, did in full *Chapter* held at *Windſor*, put the *Sovereign* in Mind of the *Decrees* anciently made in this Caſe. Whereupon it was ordained * by the *Sovereign*, with the Conſent of all the *Knights-Companions* preſent, 'That 'the ſaid Conſtitution, ſo honoura- 'ble and charitable in itſelf, and to 'which they were all ſworn, at their 'Entrance into the *Order*, ſhould be 'revived, and put in Practice, and 'for ever hereafter obſerved, under 'the Penalty contained in the Sta- 'tutes, both towards the *Knights* 'that were to pay the ſame, and to- 'wards the *Dean* of *Windſor*, who 'was to collect it: And farther, that 'the ſame ſhould begin for the five '*Knights*, whoſe Atchievements were 'at that Feaſt offer'd. And concer- 'ning Stranger Princes, it pleaſed 'the

|| *Lib. R.* *p.* 87.

* *Ib.*

'the *Sovereign* to expreſs himſelf, 'that as by the Statutes *They* are left 'to perform theſe Payments by them-'ſelves, if they would, ſo if the ſame 'was not done by *Them*, that then, 'and thenceforwards, the ſame ſhould 'be paid by the *Sovereign* himſelf. But to proceed.

As to the *Deceaſed Knight's Honour*, the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution* ordain'd, * *That when any one of the firſt* Found-ers *ſhould die, there ſhould be made in Metal a* Scutcheon *of his Arms, with his Helm or Creſt, and faſten'd at the Back of his Stall, for a Mark of Honour to him that bore them.* And in like manner, *That their* Succeſſors *ſhould have a like* Scutcheon *fixed on the Backs of their Stalls*; and to difference them from thoſe of the firſt *Founders*, they were appointed to be made in Bigneſs, leſs than theirs, and to be placed ſomewhat underneath them.

* *V. ſup. p.* 63.

But this *Article* relates only to the *Knights-Companions*, not to the *Sovereigns* of this moſt noble *Order*; nor do we find that any of them had *Plates* of their Arms and Stiles ſet upon the Back of their Stalls.

King

KING *Henry* VIII's *Statutes* * made ſome Alteration in this Matter, as to the Time of ſetting up the *Plates* of the *Knights-Companions*, the Nature of the *Metal*, *&c.*

* *V. ſup.* P. 105.

IN Tract of Time, many of theſe noble and remarkable Memorials were by Sacrilegious Hands torne off and imbezzled; tho' they are and have been generally made of *Copper*, the better to defeat the Deſigns of Avarice and Rapine: For *that* of the Duke of *Wirtemberg*'s, being of Silver and large withall, gave ſo great a Temptation, that in the late *Wars it* was forced from the Back of the Stall, with ſome Difficulty ſure; ſome Part of the Wainſcot being carried away with it.

IN thoſe Wars, his Majeſty King *Charles* I. being deſirous to put a Stop to a Miſchief, not in his Power to prevent, as alſo to preſerve the Remembrance of the precedent *Knights-Companions*, commanded the Dean of *Windſor* to deſcribe the *Stiles* of thoſe that remained, in a *Book*; which he accordingly did, and laid it up in the *College*. But what became of this *Book*, does not appear.

'TIS

'Tis obſervable, that for many Years after the Inſtitution of the *Order*, the *Plate* whereon the *Shield* was engraved, bore no other Inſcription, but the deceaſed *Knights Name* ſet at the Foot thereof, under the Scutcheon of his Arms. Afterwards his chief *Title* of *Honour* began to be added, tho' now and then in theſe firſt and elder Times, *both* were omitted, as alſo their *Creſts*. But about the Beginning of King *Henry* VIII's Reign, not only the *Knight*'s chief *Title*, but all other his *Titles* of *Dignity*, whether *Honorary* or *Officiary*, and every thing in that Kind due, were drawn together in one Inſcription, concluding with that of *Knight* of this moſt noble *Order*; and which, about the ſame time, the *Knights-Companions* uſed to inſert into both publick and private Inſtruments of Writing, wherein any of them were concerned; a Cuſtom obſerved by the *Knights* of other *Sovereign Orders* Abroad.

At firſt, the *Knights-Companions* gave their paternal Coats of *Arms*, ſingly and without any *Quarterings*; but towards the Beginning of *Hen.* V's Reign,

Reign, they began to *Quarter*, as may appear from the Scutcheons of *Robert* Lord *Willoughby*, Lord *Bourchier*, and others. Yet was not the ſame generally uſed, but left to the Pleaſure of the *Knights-Companions:* But of later Times, this very Thing was thought of ſuch Concernment and Honour, that where a *Knight* hath been elected, who wanted *Quarterings*, the *Sovereign* hath been pleaſed to grant him another *Coat* of *Arms*, to quarter with his paternal *Coat*, leſt otherwiſe his *Banner* (which ought to hang over his Stall) ſhould ſeem too naked.

Soon after the Beginning of the Reign of *Henry* VIII. the *Knights* compaſs'd their *Shields* with the Royal *Garter*; and thereon (if Noblemen) placed the *Coronet* belonging to their Dignity, continuing the Uſe ever ſince.

As touching the *Supporters*; there are but two Inſtances, the one of *John Beaufort* the firſt Duke of *Somerſet* of that Name, elected *ann.* 20. *Hen.* VI. the other, of *Anthony Woodvill* Earl *Rivers*, elected *ann.* 5. *Ed.* IV. till the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. when it

grew common, as alſo the Ingraving their peculiar *Motto's* or *Deviſes* upon the Plates. But to proceed.

ANOTHER *Honour* done to the Defunct *Knight*, is a moſt ſolemn *Offering* up of his *Atchievements* at the High *Altar*, according to the Magnificence of ſo great an Order; namely, the *Banner* of his *Arms*, his *Sword*, his *Helmet*, and *Creſt*, with its *Mantlings*. This *Ceremony* being now a days perform'd, at the Time when the *Elect-Knight* is *inſtalled*, we have above * referr'd to it, when ſpeaking of the Ceremony of *Inſtallation*.

* *P.* 268.

ACCORDINGLY we obſerve in the firſt place, that this ſolemn Ceremony of *Offering* up ſuch *Atchievements* is local to the *Chappel* of St. *George*, within the *Caſtle* of *Windſor*.

KING *Henry* VIII. being interr'd in that *Chappel*, and his *Atchievements* offer'd up at his Interment, it was determined, after ſome Debate, *That the ſaid* Atchievements *ſhould not again be offer'd, but remain over the* Sovereign's Stall *for his Son King* Edward VI.

BUT when the *Sovereigns* of this moſt Noble *Order* are not inter*a*'d at *Wind-*

Windſor, then their *Atchievements* have been offer'd up at the next enſuing Feaſt, as were thoſe of Queen *Elizabeth*, which the *Blue Book* notes to be done * at Morning Prayer, the 11th of *July*, *ann.* 1. *Jac.* R.

* *Lib. C. p.* 152.

As to the *Time* for performing this Ceremony, it was ordained † to be on the *Morrow* after the *Feaſt*; which continu'd till the Time of the Reformation, when the *Maſs* of *Requiem* being aboliſh'd, this Solemnity was nevertheleſs perform'd in the Morning Service on the *Morrow*, immediately after the *Offertory*. At length this Solemnity and *that* of Inſtallation were *both* perform'd in one Day: But the *Firſt* was not begun till the *Latter* was finiſh'd; until *ann.* 9. *Jac.* R. ‖ when he, obſerving a Kind of Incongruity in the Order of the Ceremony, *viz.* to inſtall a new *Knight* (and who being thus inſtalled, frequently became one of thoſe *Knights*, that offered Part of the Defunct *Knight's Atchievements*) before his Predeceſſor had been fully diſcharged of his Stall, gave Order for *Offering* ſuch *Atchievements*

† *Lib. N. p.* 66.

‖ *Lib. C. p.* 173. 178.

ments firſt, and before the Inſtalment of the *Elect Knight* or *Knights*.

Not long after, it was thought convenient, to perform this Ceremony on the *Eve* of the *Feaſt*, preſently after the firſt *Veſpers* begun, and next to proceed on with the *Inſtallation* of the *Elect-Knight*, whereby as much as poſſible, the *Stalls* of the *Knights-Companions* might be ſupplied, and conſequently the Places among them filled up, in all the reſt of the Solemnities of the *Feaſt*. And at all Times afterwards, during that pious King's Reign, the *Offering of Atchievements* was the firſt Ceremony perform'd on the *Eve* of the *Feaſt*, next after the Deceaſe of a *Knight*, tho' no *Inſtallation* followed.

In the 15th of *Charles* II. the ancient Cuſtom was revived of *Inſtalling* firſt, and the *Offering* of the *Atchievements* deferr'd till the *Morrow* after the *Feaſt* Day; the ſame was obſerv'd at the *Feaſt* held 23. *Car.* II.

As to the *Manner* and Order of this Ceremony, among other *Inſtitutions* of King *Henry* V. 'tis apppointed, *That as often as theſe* Atchievements *are*

are to be offer'd, the Sword *of the deceaſed* Knight *ſhall be firſt offer'd, being carried up to the High Altar, by two of the* Knights-Companions, *whom the* Sovereign *or his* Deputy *ſhall aſſign to that Purpoſe; and afterwards the* Helm, *with the* Creſt *and* Mantlings, *by two other* Knights-Companions, *named alſo by the* Sovereign *or his* Deputy; *and this Offering is to be made for them, in the Order as they were inſtalled,* * *not as they died.* But of the *Offering* of a Defunct *Knight*'s Banner, we find no expreſs Mention till the 18th of King *Henry* VII. But afterwards the Direction for Offering this *Enſign*, was taken into K. *Henry* VIII's Statutes, † and was to be the *firſt* in order; and ſo it has been ſince generally obſerved.

* *Lib. R. p.* 84.

† *V. ſup. p.* 88.

No *Proxy* or *Deputy* may here be admitted to any Part of the Ceremony, tho' in the *Offering* of *Mony* he ought; as is clear from many Examples. But the *Prelate* of the *Order*, the *Canons* of the *College*, and the *Officers* of *Arms*, have each their reſpective Duties enjoined them. As firſt,

THE *Prelate* and two of the *Canons*, ought to proceed up to the *Altar*, immediately before *Garter* ſummons down the *Knights-Companions* to the *Offering*, and there ſtand ready to receive the *Atchievements* as they are ſeverally offer'd up.

IT is next the Duty of the Provincial *Kings* and *Heralds*, to conduct the *Knights-Companions*, when they proceed up to the *Altar*, bearing any Part of the Defunct *Knight*'s *Atchievements*. The Whole of the Ceremony is briefly thus; the *Sexton* having beforehand taken down the *Atchievements*, and made them clean, and (before Service begins) placed them in Readineſs on a Form or Stool, ſet directly under each Defunct *Knight*'s Stall.

FIRST *Garter* riſes from his Seat, and proceeds into the Middle of the *Choir*, where, after his uſual Obeyſances, he ſummons the *Knights-Companions* to deſcend; who forthwith, in their accuſtomed Order and with uſual Reverences, come down and place Themſelves before their Stalls; whereupon *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* (or in the Abſence

Abſence of either, the Senior *Herald*, or of both the two Eldeſt *Heralds)* paſs down from the Steps of the *Altar*, into the Body of the *Choir*; in the *Interim*, *Garter* takes the *Banner* of the Eldeſt Defunct *Knight* into his Hands, and preſents it *half rolled* up, to the two Senior *Knights-Companions*; the two *Provincial Kings*, being by this Time come near the two Senior *Knights*, there make their double Obeyſances, and afterwards another to the *Knights-Companions*, and then ſtep a little aſide: In the mean time, the *Knights* having took the *Banner* between them, make their double Reverence, and (being preceded by the *Kings*) paſs up to the *Altar*, bearing *it* with the lower End of the Staff foremoſt, and at the firſt *Haut-Pas* make another double Reverence. The *Provincial Kings* being arrived at the uppermoſt *Haut-Pas* before the *Altar*, after an humble *Obeyſance*, divide themſelves to make way for the *Knights-Companions* to offer, and bowing to the ſaid *Knights* as they paſs by, the *Knights* forthwith raiſe the Point of the *Banner* upwards, and (after a

ſingle Reverence towards the *Altar*) preſent *it* upon *their Knees*, to the *Prelate* of the *Order*, who forthwith receives it from them, and delivers *it* to the two *Canons* ſtanding on each Side him, and they depoſite it upon *Cuſhions* laid before the *Altar*.

THIS done, the two *Provincial Kings* conduct the foreſaid *Knights-Companions* back into the *Choir*, who with uſual Reverences retire to their Stations, *viz.* under (not to) their Stalls, and the *Provincial Kings* to their Places, on either Side the *Altar*.

NEXT, the two *Senior Heralds* paſs down into the *Choir*, as did the *Provincial Kings*, while *Garter*, taking up the *Sword*, preſents it alſo to the two next *Senior Knights*, who proceed up to the *Altar* with the ſaid two *Heralds* before them, in the ſame Order as before, and bearing the *Sword* between them, offer the ſame with the *Pomel* or *Hilt* upward, and then return to their Stations *below* in the *Choir*, conducted as before.

IN the third place, the two next Senior *Heralds* go down as before, *Garter* in the mean time preſenting the

the *Helm* and *Creſt* to the two next Senior *Knights*, who likewiſe proceed to the *Altar*, and there offer it in the ſame Manner, and with like Ceremony, as had been the *Banner* and *Sword*. And if there be more *Atchievements* of Defunct *Knights* to be offer'd than one, the *Knights-Companions* preſent, by courſe, two and two, perform the reſt, in Manner before deſcribed.

THE *Purſuivants* at *Arms* do no Part of this Duty, only the *Provincial Kings* and *Heralds*, each in their Turns and by Couples. When there are the *Atchievements* of ſeveral *Knights* to be offer'd, and that the Junior *Heralds* have done their Duty, the *Provincial Kings* begin again, and ſo continue the Courſe, till all the *Atchievements* be offer'd; the *Organs* playing while the *Offering* laſteth.

IT appears, that heretofore *Garter* hath not only begun this Solemnity, and preſented the *Banner* to the firſt Pair of *Knights-Companions*, but alſo conducted them up to the *Offering*.

IT was alſo the Uſage heretofore, for the *Prelate* to deliver the offered

Atchieve-

Atchievements, to ſome of the *Heralds*, before appointed to receive them, which they immediately depoſited upon (and ſometimes near) the *Altar*; *they* ſtanding on either Side the *Prebendary*.

His late Majeſty *Charles* II. did (*ann.* 15. of his Reign) command, that the *Atchievements* ſhould then and after be laid *below* before the *Altar*; judging it indecent to place *Them*, where the ſacred *Myſteries* of the Body and Blood of our *Saviour* are with great Reverence conſecrated. He alſo commanded, at the *Feaſt* held *ann.* 23. of his Reign, that when the Ceremonies of *Offering* were ended, the *Atchievements* ſhould be diſpoſed, Part on the South, and other Part on the North, Side of the *Altar*, till *Service* was finiſh'd.

The *Atchievements* themſelves, being thus ſolemnly *Offer'd*, become Parcel of the Goods of the *Chappel*, and are included within the Words of the *Statutes* * of the *College*, whereby the *Sovereign* granted to the *Dean* and *Canons*, all *Oblations*. Accordingly, the *Dean* and *Canons* have common-

* *Art.* 33. *v. etiam Lib. N. p.* 126.

commonly depoſited *Them* in the *Chapter-Houſe*. But the *Helms* and *Swords*, becauſe they were at firſt forged for this very Purpoſe, of an extraordinary Size, have commonly been redeemed, that *They* might ſerve again; *Garter* uſually compounding with the *Dean* and *Canons* for the Defunct *Knight*'s *Atchievements*.

As to the Depoſiting the Deceaſed *Knight*'s *Mantles*, we have already obſerved, * that by a Decree paſt in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, *The* Knights-Companions *were bound by Oath, to take care by their laſt Will, that after their Deceaſe, all their* Ornaments, *which they had received, ſhould be reſtored, the* Robes *to the* College, *the* Jewels *to the* King *that gave them.* Hereupon Sr. *Chriſtopher Hatton* † ſome Time before his Death, commanded that his *Mantle* ſhould be deliver'd to the *Dean* and *Canons*; and accordingly was ſent to *Windſor* after his Deceaſe. But the ‡ *Mantle* of Sir *Henry Lea*, being left to the Diſpoſal of others, and not ſent to the *College*, happen'd at length to come into the Hands of *Brokers*, and openly expoſed

* *V. ſup.* p. 145.

† *Ex Collect. D. Chr. Wren.*

‡ *Ib.*

☞ ſed to Sale in *Long-lane*, to the great Diſhonour of the *Order*.

In a *Chapter* held at *Windſor* (*Ann.* 4. *Car.* I.) the Knights were admoniſhed, * *that where the* Sovereign *ſhould vouchſafe to beſtow upon a* Knight *the* Mantle *of the* Order, *the ſaid* Knight *ſhould take Care at his Death, to have it ſent to the* Chappel [*at* Windſor] *according as the Statutes do provide.* And in another Chapter held at *Windſor* (*Ann.* 13. of the ſame Prince's Reign) the Obſervance of this Matter was ſtill enforc'd by a Decree, which obliged all the *Knights-Companions* receiving the *Enſigns* of the *Order* from the *Sovereign*, † *to take care* (*according to the Obligation of their Oath*) *that theſe* (*together with the* Book *of* Statutes) *ſhould be reſtored into the Hands of the* Sovereign, *after their Death.* And a Command was therewithall given, *that certain* Books, Mantles *and* Surcoats *then lying at* Whitehall, *ſhould be delivered to the* Regiſter *of the* Order, *to be laid up at* Windſor, *in honourable Memory of them to whom they belonged.*

* *Lib. R. p.* [illegible].

† *Ib. p.* 120.

In

IN Obſervation of theſe *Decrees*, it appears, * that the *Garter* and *George* of the Lord Treaſurer *Weſton* being ſent back, were preſented, in Chapter, held the 15th of *Car.* I. to the *Sovereign*, and afterwards deliver'd to the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windſor* to be preſerved: And at the ſame *Chapter* it was ordered, † that the Earl of *Kelley's Robes* and *Ornaments* of the *Order*, ſhou'd be ſent for by the *Chancellor*.

* Palmer's *Journ. pro an.* 1639. *p.* 36.

† *Lib. R.* *p.* 62.

THIS was farther confirm'd by his late Majeſty King *Charles* II. in Chapter held *A. D.* 1669, where it was decreed, *that the* ‖ Mantle *of each* Knight-Companion *(ſo alſo the* Book *of* Statutes*) ſhou'd be ſent to* Windſor *immediately after their Death; and that the* Chancellor *of the* Order *ſhould be obliged, by Letters to their Heirs and Executors, to put them in mind of ſending them thither.*

‖ *Lib. Carol. p.* 79.

THERE is a memorable Inſtance in the Return of the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*; being ſent back in a ſolemn Embaſſy from *Chriſtina* † Queen of *Sweden* his Daughter and Succeſſor; and the Reception

† *Lib. R.* *p.* 105.

ception order'd with conſiderable State and Ceremony.

AND now having conſider'd the *Honour* of this moſt Noble *Order*, it may not be amiſs to obſerve, how Perſons that have been thus ennobled, have ſometimes forfeited the ſame, and in what Manner ſuch *Knights-Companions* have been *degraded*. And firſt,

SO heinous an Offence as that of *High Treaſon*, hath been thought deſerving the Loſs, not only of *Life* and *Eſtate*, but *Honour* alſo: And thereupon, when Sentence hath been paſſing againſt a *Knight* for ſo great a Crime, ſometimes *Degradation* hath preceded: And this, as our learned *Selden* ſaith, is done * *as a Reſpect of Honour to* Knighthood *in general; leſt ſo much Ignominy as accompanied the Judgment for ſuch an Offence, ſhould lie on any one that was a* Knight, *when he ſuffer'd it.*

* *Titles of Honour*, p. 787.

THE Ceremony of ſuch *Degradation* has formerly conſiſted in a ſolemn taking away the *Sword* of the *Knight*, and chopping off his *Spurs*, the chief *Enſigns* of his *Honour*; and ſometimes with

with the Addition of tearing his *Coat* of *Arms*, from his Body, and putting on another *Coat*, whereon his *Arms* were revers'd; as alſo bruiſing every Piece of the *Knight*'s *Armour*, and caſting it aſide; with ſome other Ceremonies taken notice of † by Sir *William Segar*. But to ſpeak more particularly;

† *Honor. Mil. & Civil. L.* 2. *C.* 4.

THE *Enſigns* of this Noble *Order* are not to be withdrawn from a *Knight-Companion*, unleſs he be found guilty of ſome of thoſe Points of *Reproach*, which we have taken notice of above, ‖ in the ſecond Article of K. *Hen.* VIII's *Statutes*, *viz. Hereſy*, *Treaſon*, or *Flying from Battle*. On theſe *three* Points of *Reproach* we have already made ſome Remarks; * and did moreover obſerve † a *fourth* Point, *viz. Prodigality*, where a *Knight* had ſo waſted his *Eſtate*, that he was not able to ſupport his *Honour*. But *Felony* comes not within the Compaſs of this *Statute*, as not being particularly ſpecified among the *Reproaches* there reckon'd up; and ſo it has alſo been adjudg'd.

‖ *P.* 75.

* *P.* 198, 199.

† *P.* 200.

WHEN a *Knight-Companion* is found guilty of any the Offences mention'd in King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, he is uſually

uſually *degraded* at the next Chapter after; and therefore, where the *Sovereign* intends to have this Ceremony put in Execution, after he hath acquainted the *Knights-Companions* therewith, he commands *Garter* to attend ſuch of them, as are appointed to go to the Convict *Knight*; who in a ſolemn Manner firſt takes from him his *George* and *Ribband*, and then his *Garter*. And at the following Feaſt of St. *George* (or ſooner if the *Sovereign* appoint) *Publication* of his Crimes and Degradation is made by *Garter* (a *Warrant* in the mean time iſſuing out to him for taking down the *Atchievements* of the *Knight*) in the enſuing Order.

FIRST, *Garter*, in his *Coat* of *Arms* (uſually before *Morning Prayer*, if the *Grand Feaſt* or *Feaſt* of *Inſtallation* be then held) ſtanding on the higheſt Step aſcending to the *Brazen Desk* (placed in the middle of the *Choir* in St. *George*'s *Chappel* at *Windſor*) the *Officers* of *Arms* ſtanding about him, and the *Black Rod* alſo preſent, reads aloud the *Inſtrument* for publiſhing the *Knights Degradation*. This being read, one of the *Heralds* deputed thereunto (a Lad-

(a Ladder being raiſed to the Backſide of the Convict *Knights Stall*, and he, in his *Coat* of *Arms*, placed there before-hand) when *Garter* pronounces theſe Words, *viz. expelled and put from among the Arms*, &c. takes his *Creſt*, and violently caſts it down into the *Choir*, and after that, his *Banner* and *Sword*: And when the Publication is read out, all the *Officers* of *Arms* ſpurn the *Atchievements* out of the *Choir* into the Body of the *Church*; firſt the *Sword*, then the *Banner*, and laſt of all the *Creſt*; ſo on, out of the *Weſt-Door*, thence through the Caſtle Gate, and then thrown into the *Ditch*.

NOR has *Degradation* alone been thought ſufficient; and therefore in a *Chapter* held * 32 *Henry* VIII. it was determined, that whereſoever the *Actions* and *Names* of ſuch *Offenders* ſhould be found in the *Books* of the *Order*, theſe Words [*Vah Proditor*] ſhould be written in the *Margent*; by which Means the *Regiſters* would be preſerved fair, and not defaced with Razures and Blots.

* *Lib. N. p.* 283.

I SHALL cloſe the whole of what I have to offer at preſent, in taking no-

tice of the *Duties* and *Fees* payable by the *Knights-Companions* at their *Inſtallations.*

SUCH was the Piety and Bounty of our *Anceſtors*, that they thought no Work well performed, that was not attended with ſome *charitable Donation*; eſpecially, if it had relation to the *Church.* Hence was it, that the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, as alſo *thoſe* of *Henry* VIII. do both of them ordain, that every Knight-Companion *ſhou'd at his Entrance beſtow a certain Sum of Money, according to his Quality and Degree:* And if the Reader pleaſes to look back, * he will find the Sums ſpecified in *both* Bodies of Statutes; only the Titles of *Marqueſs* and *Viſcount* do not occurr in the *former*, there being no ſuch Titles, when the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution* were eſtabliſhed.

* *P.* 62, 104.

WHAT Uſe theſe Sums were put to, and how diſtributed, appears alſo by the Appointment there † ſet down, viz. *towards the Relief of the* Canons *of* Windſor, *the* Alms Knights, *and Augmentation of the* Alms Deeds *there appointed perpetually to be done.* To the end *that every one entring into this* Military

† *Ib.*

litary Order, *might thereby more worthily obtain the* Name, Title *and* Privilege *of one of the* Founders *of the* Order: *It being ſuppoſed* * *a worthy and juſt thing, that whoſoever obtained this* Privilege, *ſhould add ſome ſmall Increment to the* Foundation.

* *Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art.* 21.

THO' the *Sovereign* of the *Order* ſtands charged with Payment of Fees to the *College*, yet is it to be underſtood only of thoſe *Sovereigns*, who were not (before the Aſſumption of their Stall) elected into this *Order*: For we ſee in the Caſe of K. *Hen.* VI. (the firſt *Sovereign* that had not, before his being ſo, been elected a *Knight-Companion*) there paſs'd an Order in *Chapter* † (*Ann.* 1. *Henry* VI.) for Payment of his Fees, upon aſſuming his Stall, according to the Appointment of the Statute.

† *Lib. M. p.* 75.

AND here 'tis obſervable likewiſe, that (*Ann.* 6. *Car.* I.) Lord *Weſton*, tho' but a *Baron*, did pay, at his Inſtallation, as an *Earl* ‖ ought by the *Statutes*, on account of his being *Lord Treaſurer* of *England*.

‖ *Lib. R. p.* 66.

THIS Matter of Inſtallation-Fees was, upon the Reſtoration of King

Charles II. repreſented by ſeveral Petitions to the *Sovereign* and *Knights-Companions* in *Chapter*; and in the 22d of his Reign, a *Report* was made,* whereby ſuch *Inſtallation-Fees* were thought reaſonable and requiſite to be paid by the *Knights-Companions*, as were contained in an annexed *Schedule*; and the ſaid *Report* and *Schedule* being afterwards read over and approved by the *Sovereign*, *Part* of it, containing the *Fees* due to the *Dean* and *Canons*, *Choir* and *Alms-Knights* of *Windſor*, the *Regiſter*, *Garter*, *Black Rod*, and *Officers* of *Arms*, was order'd to be entred upon the *Regiſter* of the *Order in perpetuam rei memoriam*, to prevent all future Queſtions and Controverſies that might otherwiſe ariſe; the *other Part*, wherein were ſet down the *Fees* payable to the reſt of the *Sovereign*'s Servants, was appointed to be only ſigned in *Garter*'s Bills, with all the other *Fees* as they became due.

* *Lib. Car.* p. 84.

In this Decree the *Inſtallation-Fees* made payable to the *Dean* and *Canons* are theſe, *viz.*

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A *Stranger King*	20	00	00
A *Stranger Prince*	10	00	00
The *Prince* of *Wales*	20	00	00
A *Duke*	10	00	00
A *Marqueſs*	08	06	08
An *Earl*	06	13	04
A *Viſcount*	05	16	08
A *Baron*	05	00	00
A *Knight-Batchelor*	03	06	08

THESE *Fees* ought to be paid * at the Time of the *Knight's Inſtallation*, whether Perſonal or by Proxy, ſo alſo for a *Stranger*; and as to the Practice, it hath been thus, *viz.* to pay *them* by the Hands of ſome one of the *Knights-Companions* Servants, ſo ſoon as the Ceremonies of Inſtallation were ended.

* *V. ſup. p.* 63, 105.

ANCIENTLY the *Alms-Knights* ſhared in the *Fees* paid to the *College*; as is manifeſt from the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*; † and ſo ſay the ſucceeding Bodies of the *Statutes*. Howbeit, ſince their Re-eſtabliſhment by Queen *Eliz.* upon a new Conſtitution, they have received Inſtallation-*Fees apart* from thoſe paid to the *College*, which by

† *Sup. p.* 62, 104.

the foreſaid Eſtabliſhment of Inſtallation-*Fees*, *Ann.* 22. *Car.* II. are made equal and alike to *thoſe* thereby payable to the *Dean* and *Canons*.

THE *Choir* of *Windſor*, under which not only the *Vicars*, but the *Vergers*, *Choriſters*, *Sextons* and *Bell-Ringers* are comprehended, reap ſome Benefit by the Inſtallation of a *Knight*, and have in all Times been thought deſerving of *Fees* among others, who performed Service at theſe Solemnities: Hereupon were they taken into the Eſtabliſhment made *ann.* 22. *Car.* II. which has ſettled on them theſe following *Fees*, *viz.*

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A *Stranger King*	16	00	00
A *Stranger Prince*	08	10	00
A *Prince* of *Wales*	16	00	00
A *Duke*	08	10	00
A *Marqueſs*	06	15	00
An *Earl*	05	10	00
A *Viſcount*	04	00	00
A *Baron*	04	00	00
A *Knight-Batchelor*	03	00	00

AMONG the *Officers*, to whom *Inſtallation-Fees* are due, ſtands firſt the *Regiſter*, who by the *Conſtitutions* of his *Office*, is to have of every *Knight-Companion* * 13 *s.* 4 *d.* in Mony, and a *Robe*. This *Fee* of the *Robe* was for ſome Time neglected; till Dr. *Matthew Wren*, Dean of *Windſor* and Regiſter of the *Order*, petition'd the *Sovereign*, that it might be reſtor'd and ſettled; which was afterwards done in the Time of his Brother and Succeſſor in that *Office*, Dr. *Chriſtopher Wren*, the Father of the preſent Sir *Chriſtopher Wren*, the Wonder and Ornament of this Iſle, both in what he *has* done, and is *yet* doing for it; as alſo the Strength and Vigour, with which he ſtill executes ſuch pious and Royal Deſigns.

* *Lib. N.* p. 235.

WHEN therefore Dr. *Chriſtopher Wren* firſt entred upon his *Office*, the *Robe* was aſſign'd him out of the *Sovereign's Wardrobe*, Value 28 *l.* 1 *s.* And according to this Valuation of his *Robe*, a like Value was propoſed (by way of Compoſition) upon the *Knights-Companions Batchelors* (the loweſt Degree among the *Knights* of

the *Order*) to be paid the *Regiſter* in *lieu* of the ſaid Robe, ſuppoſing they could not give him leſs: And hence were raiſed the Proportions, for each ſeveral Degree of *Honour*, upon thoſe who ſhould be admitted into this moſt Noble *Order*, *viz.*

		l. *s.*		*l.* *s.* *d.*
For a	*Knight Batchelor*	13 4	And	28 0 0
	Baron	13 4		30 0 0
	Viſcount	13 4		32 0 0
	Earl	13 4		34 0 0
	Marqueſs	13 4		36 0 0
	Duke	13 4		38 0 0
	Prince	13 4		40 0 0

KING *Charles* I. in the 14th of his Reign, when his Son Prince *Charles* had been inſtalled, was graciouſly pleaſed to think it moſt reaſonable, on the *Regiſter*'s behalf, and order'd, that at every Inſtallation of a *Prince*, the *Regiſter* ſhould receive for his Fee, 13 *s.* 4 *d.* and 40 *l.* in *lieu* of his *Robe*; and that Prince *Charles* ſhould pay him the ſaid Sums, which was accordingly done: And the ſame were ſince ſettled on this *Officer* by the Eſtabliſhment of Inſtallation - *Fees* made

made the 22d of *Car.* II. and alſo the ſame Sum order'd to be paid for the the Inſtallation of a *Stranger King*; and for a *Stranger Prince* 38 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* But *Thoſe* thereby made due from *Knights-Subjects* of other Degrees, are the ſame as above.

NEXT to the *Regiſter* does *Garter* claim both *Droits* and *Fees*, who hath a greater Share of Buſineſs than any other *Officer* of the *Order*. As to the firſt of theſe, it was ordained by the *Conſtitutions* of his *Office*, * *That as often as any* Knight *ſhould be inſtalled, he might challenge for himſelf the* Garments *worn by him, immediately before his Inveſtiture with the* Surcoat *of the* Order. And the conſtant Practice hath interpreted this to be the *Knight*'s *upper Garment*, anciently a *ſhort Gown*, of later Times a *Cloak*, but now a *Coat*; which he puts off in the *Chapter-Houſe*, when the Inveſtiture begins. And heretofore *Garter* immediately put it on, and wore it during the whole Ceremony of Inſtallation. Sometimes *Garter* had not this Garment in *Kind*, but received a *Fine* in lieu thereof, or a Compoſition in Mony,

* *Lib. N.* p. 235.

Mony, according to the Eſtate of the *Knight-Companion.*

But as this upper Garment at length grew *Richer*, ſo the Compoſitions grew *Higher:* For, by Order of K. *Charles* I. at the Inſtallation of his Son Prince *Charles*, *Garter* received for his *Fee* 40 *l.* and for the Compoſition of *His* upper Garment 60 *l.* in the whole 100 *l.* And by the Eſtabliſhment of Inſtallation-*Fees* (*ann.* 22. *Car.* II.) the Compoſition ſet on each *Knight-Companion*, for his upper Garment, was thus rated, proportionably leſs than what was paid for the ſaid *Prince*, *viz.*

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A *Prince* of *Wales*	60	0	0
A *Duke*	55	0	0
A *Marqueſs*	50	0	0
An *Earl*	45	0	0
A *Viſcount*	40	0	0
A *Baron*	35	0	0
A *Knight Batchelor*	30	0	0

Besides this *Droit* or Compoſition, there hath in all Times been paid to *Garter*, by every *Knight-Companion*, a

Fee

Fee for his *Inſtallation*, proportioned alſo to his State and Dignity, which was likewiſe brought to the following Certainty by the ſaid late Eſtabliſhment, *viz.*

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A *Stranger King*	30	0	0
A *Stranger Prince*	20	0	0
A *Prince* of *Wales*	40	0	0
A *Duke*	35	0	0
A *Marqueſs*	30	0	0
An *Earl*	25	0	0
A *Viſcount*	20	0	0
A *Baron*	15	0	0
A *Knight Batchelor*	10	0	0

THE *Black-Rod*'s ancient *Fee*, like all other Fees, hath in ſucceeding Times been augmented: For the *Fee* paid him at the Inſtallation of *Prince Charles* (*an.* 14. *Car.* I.) was 40 *l.* and by the foreſaid Eſtabliſhment he hath allowed him, as follows, from each *Knight-Companion*.

A

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A *Stranger King*	20	0	0
A *Stranger Prince*	20	0	0
A *Prince* of *Wales*	40	0	0
A *Duke*	20	0	0
A *Marquefs*	18	0	0
An *Earl*	16	0	0
A *Viſcount*	14	0	0
A *Baron*	12	0	0
A *Knight Batchelor*	10	0	0

THE *Officers* of *Arms* likewiſe have by Cuſtom received *Fees*, as a Reward of their Attendance and Service at thoſe Solemnities; which having been encreaſed by the Bounty of the Givers, were by the ſaid late Eſtabliſhment, made the ſame with thoſe allowed the *Black Rod*; only in the *Fee* of a *Stranger King*, they have an Addition of 10 *l.* more, *His Fee* to them being 30 *l.*

IN the ſaid Liſt of *Inſtallation-Fees* eſtabliſh'd *ann.* 22. *Car.* II. we find admitted *Fees* or *Benevolences* to the *Sovereign's Servants*, to be given in, under the Hand of *Garter*, with the other Fees payable at Inſtallations, and to be paid by every *Knight*, according to ancient Cuſtom. The Table of ſuch Fees is, as follows, *viz.*

To

	The *Prince*			A *Duke*			A *Marq.*			An *Earl*			A *Viſcount*			A *Baron*			A *Kt. Bat.*		
	l.	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
To the *Wardrobe*	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00	01	15	00	01	10	00	01	05	00
To the *Trumpets*	12	00	00	06	00	00	05	00	00	04	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00
To the *Serj. Trumpeter*	02	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
To the *Muſicians* 4 *Comp.*	16	00	00	08	00	00	07	00	00	06	00	00	05	00	00	04	00	00	03	00	00
Knight-Harbinger	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08
Drums and Fifes	04	00	00	02	00	00	01	15	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
To the Porters	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	00	00
Maſter Cook	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Serjeant Porter	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Veſtry	02	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Yeomen Harbingers	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	00	00
Uſhers of the Hall	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Grooms of the Chamber	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	10	00	01	00	00
Yeomen Uſhers	06	13	04	03	06	08	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	00	00
Quarter Waiters	08	16	00	04	08	04	03	16	08	03	06	08	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00
Sewers	08	00	00	04	08	04	03	16	08	03	06	08	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00
Buttery	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Pantry	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Cellar	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00

THE

THE *Fees* due for *Stranger's Inſtallations*, being by the *Statutes* * the *Sovereign's* Charge, were uſually paid out of the *Exchequer* by a *Privy Seal* directed to the *Lord Treaſurer*, until the 13th of King *Charles* I. when an Annual Penſion, as we have obſerv'd already, † was ſettled, for Defraying not only the ordinary, but alſo extraordinary Charges of the *Order*.

* *V. ſup. p.* 105.

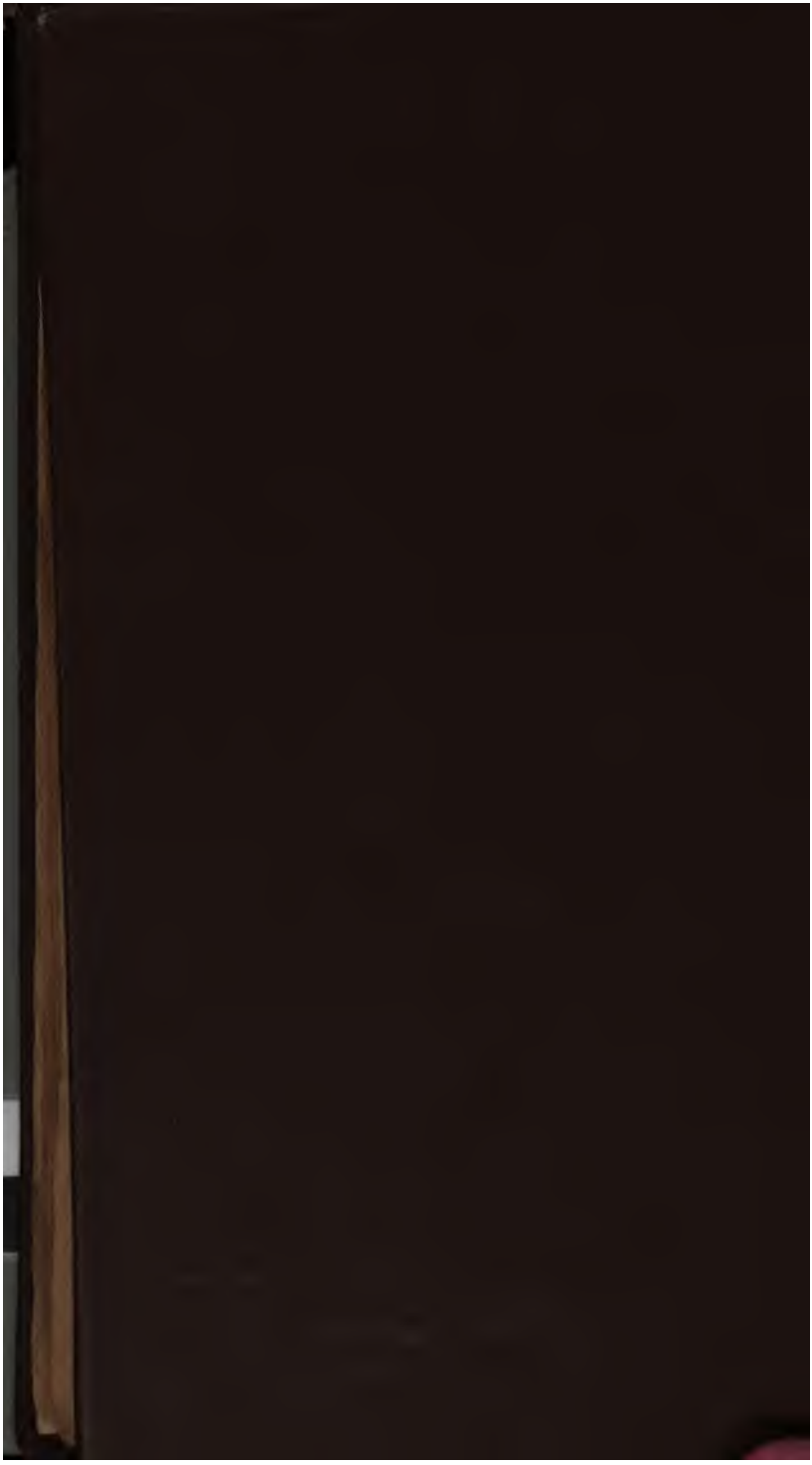
† *V. ſup. p.* 180.

INDEED Sir *Henry de Vic*, when *Chancellor*, made ſome Scruple of Paying the *Fees* due to the *College*, upon the Inſtallation of *Strangers:* But the *College* thereupon, in Conjunction with the *Regiſter*, *Garter*, and *Black Rod*, (*ann.* 15. *Car.* II.) petitioning the *Sovereign*, He was pleas'd, after hearing the Report of four *Knights-Companions*, appointed for that Purpoſe, to approve and confirm the ſame, ordering the *Chancellor* to pay out of the ſaid Annual Penſion of 1200 *l.* the ſeveral Sums following.

For

For the Inſtallation of the Prince *of* Orange.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
To the *Dean* of *Windſor* as *Regiſter*	38	13	4
To *Garter* Prin. K. of *Arms*	20	0	0
To the *Uſher* of the *Bl. Rod*	20	0	0
To the *Officers* of *Arms*	20	0	0
To the *Canons*	10	0	0
To the *Choir* and *Choriſters*	06	0	0
To the *Vergers*, *Sextons* and *Bell-Ringers*	02	0	0.
To the *Poor-Knights*	10	0	0
	126	13	04
For the Pr. Elect. of *Brand.* for all as above	126	13	4
For Prince *Edward* Count Palatine, *&c.*	*Ditto.*		
For the *Duke* of *Eſpernon*,	*Ditto.*		
For the *Prince* of *Tarent*,	*Ditto.*		
For the *Prince* of *Denmark*,	*Ditto.*		
For *Count* Marchin	93	06	08
The Whole	853	06	08

But tho' the *Sovereign* hath discharged the *Installation-Fees* due from *Strangers*, yet *They* themselves did besides, or their *Proctors* for them, always bestow particular *Largesses* and *Rewards* upon the *College*, the *Officers* of the *Order* and of *Arms*, the *Almsed* and performed their Duty at this great Solemnity.

FINIS.